



Thank you for choosing the Haval vehicle.

The more familiar you become with your vehicle, the more you will like it and the better you will be able to use its features. Therefore, you are kindly required to:

Read this manual carefully before using your vehicle. There are important tips about using your vehicle in this manual that will help you make the best use of your vehicle's technology. Additionally, you will get very useful information about driving safety, road safety and maintenance of your vehicle value.

We sincerely wish you a safe and happy journey!

01/04/2025

Overview

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult your vehicle dealer.

Accessories, spare parts and modifications

Now we can buy not only genuine parts, but also a variety of other non-genuine parts and accessories that are suitable for our vehicle. The use of non-authentic spare parts and accessories may adversely affect vehicle safety, even if these products have been approved by the relevant national or regional authorities. Great Wall Motors do not afford any responsibility and do not offer any warranty certificate if the owner decides to install or replace non-authentic spare parts and accessories.

It is forbidden to modify vehicles with non-authentic products. Modifications with non-authentic products may affect vehicle operability, safety or durability and may even violate government regulations. In addition, vehicle damage and performance issues arising from modification are not covered by warranty of quality.

It is forbidden to modify suspension, braking system and so on, which may adversely affect the operate safety of vehicle.

It is forbidden to modify the fuse box of the vehicle. Otherwise, the electrical system may be adversely affected.

Modification to electronic components, software and circuits will affect their function and the normal operation of other related components, especially safety-related systems. These modifications will affect the operation safety of the vehicle and increase the risk of accidents and injury. Therefore, please do not modify pipeline, electrical parts and software.

Validity of this manual

All information provided in this manual is up to date at the time of publication. However, due to continuous improvement of the product, the contents of this manual will be updated at any time without notice.

Depending on the vehicle specifications, vehicles shown in the figure may differ from your vehicle.

The display information (including pictures, icons, texts and so on) included in this manual are only for instructions. According to the vehicle model configuration, software version and theme settings, the actual information displayed may be different. Refer to the actual model for specific information.

About symbols

WARNING

This indicates a warning.

Failure to observe these warnings may result in serious injury or death. Such warnings tell you what to do or what not to do so as to reduce the risk of serious injuries or death.

CAUTION

This indicates a caution.

Failure to observe these cautions may result in damage to the vehicle or its equipment. Such cautions tell you what to do or what not to do so as to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle and its equipment.

NOTICE

This indicates a reminder.

Such tips contain helpful information that may be of use to you.

(▷ Page X)

This symbol indicates that more details can be seen on this page.

Tips for safety

WARNING

General precautions for your driving:

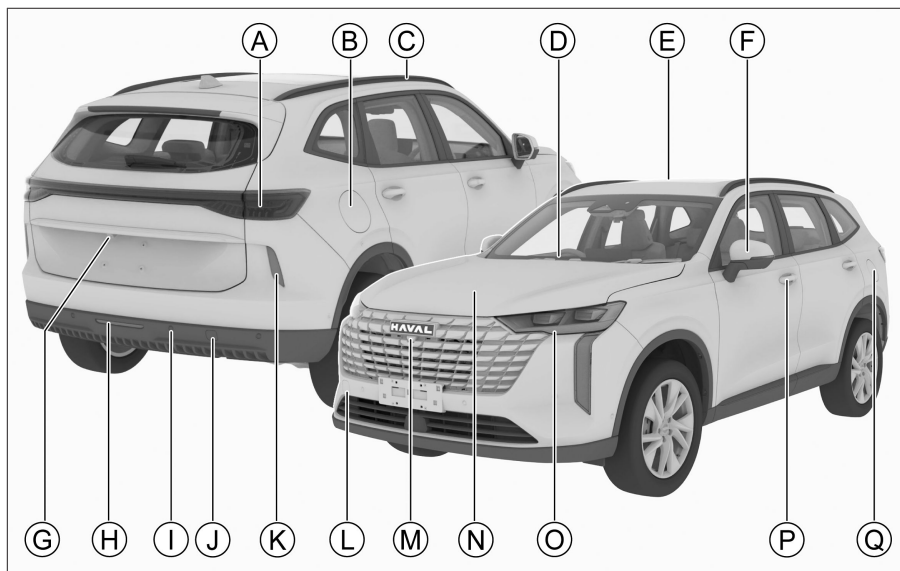
- › Drive only when fully alert: the alcohol, drug, medicine or anesthetic will slow down driver's response time and affect judgment and coordination, which makes the vehicle get out of control and results in severe safety accidents.
- › Drive carefully: be sure to drive carefully. Always keep an eye on improper movements of other drivers or pedestrians on the road so as to make timely judgments and prevent accidents.
- › Concentrate on driving: be attentive when driving. Anything that distracts the driver's attention, such as adjusting control buttons, call up and answer a mobile phone or reading, may give rise to a crash accident and serious injury to you, passengers on the vehicle and other people.

WARNING

When getting out of the vehicle, do not leave children, pets or someone who needs help in the vehicle alone.

- › Because the children, pets or someone who needs help cannot get out of the vehicle and save themselves. The temperature in the vehicle may be too high or too low in different weather, which may cause the passengers or pets in the vehicle injury even death.
 - › If the children or pets touch the key, the vehicle may move itself which is dangerous for yourselves and the vehicle, including starting the vehicle, releasing the parking brake, shifting gears, operating the doors and windows.
-

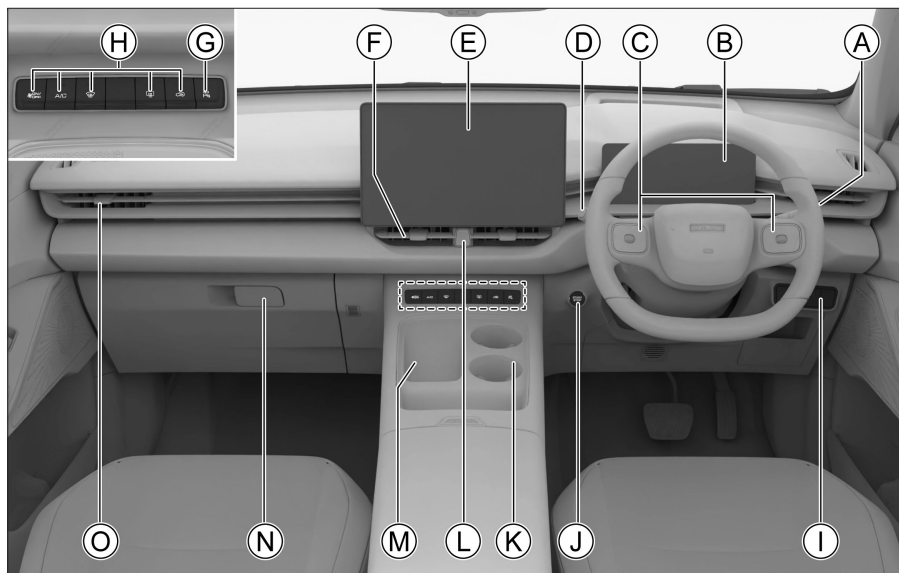
Appearance



78D83C99BE9A

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Ⓐ Combination tail light | Ⓜ Around view monitor (AVM) 130 |
| Ⓑ Charging port cover (PHEV models) | Ⓝ Bonnet 38 |
| Ⓒ Roof rack 60 | Ⓞ Combination headlight 62 |
| Ⓓ Front wiper 286 | Ⓟ Door handle 21 |
| Ⓔ Sunroof 33 | Ⓠ Fuel tank door 40 |
| Ⓕ Side mirror 57 | |
| Ⓖ Around view monitor (AVM) 130 | |
| Ⓗ Rear fog light 62 | |
| Ⓘ Collision avoidance radar 128 | |
| | Ⓤ Rear tow hook cover 265 |
| | Ⓚ Reflex reflector |
| | Ⓛ Front tow hook cover 263 |

Interior trim



F8FC1047A1B7

- Ⓐ Gear shift 116
- Ⓑ Virtual instrument panel 177
- Ⓒ Multifunction steering wheel. Depending on the configuration, the steering wheel buttons are used for:
Cruise control assist 157
Multimedia control 196
Instrument panel control 180
- Ⓓ Wiper control 69
Light control 62
- Ⓔ Multimedia display screen 202
- Ⓕ A/C centre outlet 79
- Ⓖ Around view monitor button 130
- Ⓗ A/C buttons 72
- Ⓘ Control switch
- ⓵ Power supply switch 110
- Ⓚ Front cup holder 83
- Ⓛ Hazard warning light 66
- Ⓜ Wireless charging area 80
- Ⓝ Glove box 82
- Ⓞ A/C side outlet 79

Table of contents

1 Operation

This Chapter introduces the method for operating on-board vehicle equipment, such as keys, doors, windows and seats.

2 Driving

This Chapter introduces the driving information, such as vehicle start, gear shifting and instrument of the vehicle.

3 Audiovisual system

This Chapter introduces the Bluetooth telephone, system setting and other audio-visual system related information.

4 Safety

This Chapter introduces the functional equipment, such as anti-theft system and seat belts.

5 Emergency

This Chapter introduces the treatment methods for vehicle failures such as flat tyre and battery loss.

6 Maintenance

This Chapter introduces the routine inspection and regular maintenance of the vehicle.

7 Technical data

This Chapter introduces the vehicle parameters, identification number and other information.

8 Index

This Chapter introduces the alphabetical index in this manual.

Operation

Keys.....	16	Anti-pinch function	30
About the key	16	Delay function	31
Button introduction	17	One-push closing function	31
Taking out the mechanical key	18	Window settings.....	31
Battery replacement.....	19	Initialization	32
Door locks	21	Sunroof.....	33
Locking and unlocking the passive entry system	21	Opening and closing the sunroof ..33	
Locking and unlocking with key buttons	22	Opening and closing the sunshade	34
Locking and unlocking with center control buttons	22	Linkage function.....	35
Unlocking with the interior handle	22	Anti-pinch function	35
Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key	23	Delay function	36
Emergency lock	23	One-push closing function	36
Child lock.....	24	Automatic closing	36
Flameout unlocking	24	Initialization	36
Auto lock	24	Bonnet.....	38
Automatic resetting	24	Opening.....	38
Automatic unlock upon collision ..24		Closing.....	39
Tailgate.....	25	Refuelling	40
Power tailgate.....	25	Refuelling (PHEV models).....	40
Emergency unlock.....	28	Refuelling (HEV models).....	41
Windows	29	Fuel information	42
Driver window switch	29	Vehicle charging and discharging.....	43
Passenger side window switches ..30		Energy management (PHEV models)	43
Thermal protection function	30	Energy consumption information	44
		Ordinary charging cable.....	44
		Slow charging (AC charging)	45
		Fast charging (DC charging).....	49

Vehicle to load discharge method	52	Side roof light	67
Seats	53	Center roof light	68
Headrest	53	Luggage area lights	68
Power seat	54	Wiper control	69
Convenient adjustment of front passenger seat	55	Front wiper	69
Rear seat adjustment	55	Rear wiper	71
Seat setting	56	Front wiper settings	71
Rearview mirrors	57	A/C system	72
Manual anti-glare interior rearview mirror	57	A/C control panel	72
Automatic anti-glare inside rearview mirror	57	A/C interface	74
Mirror adjustment	57	A/C control	78
Side mirrors settings	58	Vent	79
Steering wheel	59	Mobile phone wireless charging	80
Adjustment method	59	Mobile phone wireless charging	80
Horn	59	Interior equipment	82
Roof rack	60	Sun visor	82
Roof rack	60	Vanity mirror	82
Light control	62	Storage box	82
Vehicle equipment	62	Storage case	83
Light settings	62	Spectacle case	83
Light control	62	Front cup holder	83
Emergency flasher switch	66	Rear cup holder	84
Hazard warning lights on with emergency braking	66	Bottle holder	84
Daytime running light	66	Power supply socket	85
Light height adjustment	67		
Reading light	67		

Driving

Driving procedures	90
Before driving	90
Driving	91
Precautions for passengers	93

Parking the vehicle	94	Tips for safety	113
Economic driving	94	Electronic parking brake	113
Advice on driving in harsh environments.....	96	Gear shifting	116
Driving in foggy weather	96	Introduction to gear positions	116
Driving in the rain	96	Gear shifting	116
Fording drive.....	97	N gear parking.....	118
In hot weather	98	Crawling function	118
Driving in cold weather	99	Starting off the vehicle	118
Advice on driving during break-in period	103	Stopping the vehicle	119
Tyres	103	Driving modes	121
Brake pad.....	103	Driving mode switching	121
Hybrid electric vehicle.....	104	Steering wheel assist modes.....	123
About hybrid electric vehicles (PHEV Models).....	104	Switching method	123
About hybrid electric vehicles (HEV Models).....	105	Pedestrian warning sound	124
Energy regeneration.....	106	Pedestrian warning sound	124
Electricity reserve.....	107	One-pedal mode	125
Workshop mode	107	One-pedal mode	125
Battery safety switch	108	Parking assist system	126
Emergency cut-off point	108	Parking assist system sensor	126
Power battery recovery.....	109	Parking setting.....	128
Power supply mode.....	110	Collision avoidance radar	130
Push-button type	110	Around view monitor (AVM) (unequipped with fusion parking)	130
Starting and shutting down the vehicle	111	Around view monitor (AVM) (equipped with fusion parking).....	132
Vehicle starting.....	111	Intelligent fusion parking system	135
Shutting down the vehicle	112	Reverse tracking.....	139
Parking brake	113	Tyre pressure monitoring system ..	141
		System description	141
		Monitoring function.....	142

Warning function	142	Comfortable braking	171
Fatigue driving reminder system....	143	Dynamic steering torque control (DST) system	172
Introduction of fatigue driving re- minder	143	Emission control system.....	173
Instructions.....	143	Reminder.....	173
Intelligent driver assist system	145	Oxygen sensor.....	173
Intelligent driving assist system sen- sor	145	Catalytic converter.....	173
Forward assist system.....	148	Turbocharger.....	174
Rear side assist.....	150	Fuel evaporation control unit.....	174
Lane assist	152	Crankcase emission control unit	174
Traffic assist.....	156	On-board diagnostic system	174
Adaptive cruise control system...	157	Head-up display system	175
Intelligent cruise control system	162	About the system.....	175
Hill descent control system (HDC)..	167	Instructions.....	175
Hill descent control system (HDC)	167	Virtual instrument panel.....	177
Driving assist system.....	169	Instrument panel overview (PHEV Model).....	177
Driving assist system safety tips.	169	Instrument panel overview (HEV Model).....	178
Anti-lock brake system.....	169	Instrument panel control.....	180
Electronic braking force distribution system	170	Instrument indicator lights.....	181
Braking force assist system.....	170	Instrument indicator lights.....	181
Traction control system	170	Power management system	191
Electronic stability control system	170	Introduction to the power supply management system.....	191
Rollover prevention system.....	171	Information you should know.....	192
HHC (Hill-start Hold Control).....	171		
Electric power steering system ...	171		
Secondary collision mitigation sys- tem.....	171		

Audiovisual system

Safety tips	194
Tips for safety	194
About the use	194

About the radio	194
About USB storage devices	194
About Bluetooth.....	195
Panel introduction.....	196
Steering wheel buttons	196
External devices	198
Display screen introduction	200
Display screen status bar	200
Multimedia display screen	202
Home	202
All apps interface	203
Control center	204
Navigation scenarios	206
Entertainment scenarios	208
TuneIn Radio.....	208
Display setting.....	208
Connection settings.....	209
Sound settings.....	210
Voice	211
Coffee space	212
Phone	213
App Store	214
System manager	214
Weather.....	214
Users.....	214
Messages.....	214
System	215
About online upgrade	215

Safety

Seat belts	218
Safety tips.....	218
Wear the seat belt properly.....	219
Pretensioner seat belts	220
Three-point seat belt instructions	221
Airbags	222
Tips for safety	222
Airbags.....	224
Front airbags	225
Front passenger airbag switch....	227
Side airbag	228
Curtain airbags.....	229
Child restraint system	230
Safety instructions for child seat	230
Fixing points for the child seat....	231
Recommended child seat categories	233
Installation method of child seats	233
Vehicle anti-theft system	238
System introduction	238
Instructions.....	238
Emergency shut-off system.....	240
Emergency cut-off system	240
Event data recorder.....	241
Event data recorder (EDR)	241

Emergency

On-board tools.....	248
Storage location for on-board tool kit.....	248
Emergency tyre repair and inflation	249
Inflator and tyre repair fluid	249
Emergency tyre repair.....	250
Tyre inflation.....	251
In the case of a vehicle accident.....	252
Traffic incidents occur to the vehicle	252
A vehicle getting stuck or bottoming out.....	252
For the fire accident of vehicle....	253
In case of vehicle immersion accident.....	255
Jump start	256
Symptoms of a drained vehicle battery	256
Jumper start method (PHEV models)	256
Jumper start method (HEV models)	257
Engine overheating.....	260
Engine overheating.....	260
Towing	262
Using a professional vehicle to tow	262
Towing with the tow hook	263
Towing a faulty vehicle	265

Service and rescue.....	267
Emergency rescue system	267
Fault rescue	267
Manual emergency rescue	268
Auto emergency rescue	268
IOV (Internet Of Vehicles) function indicator light	269

Maintenance

Necessity of vehicle maintenance..	272
Engine compartment	273
Safety tips.....	273
Fluid level	274
Fluid level	275
Engine oil.....	276
Brake fluid.....	277
Engine/electric drive system coolant	278
Windscreen washer fluid	278
Safety labels and signs.....	280
Engine coolant warning label	280
High-voltage warning signs	281
Drive motor coolant warning label	283
Engine compartment warning label	283
Battery warning label	283
Part replacement	285
Fuses.....	285
Replacing the front wiper blade .	286
Rear wiper blade replacement....	288

Light maintenance	288
Vehicle maintenance	290
Tyre maintenance	290
Sunroof maintenance.....	293
Battery	294
Protection films for new vehicles	294
Exterior maintenance.....	294
Interior maintenance	297
Anti-corrosion measures	300
Long-term storage of the vehicle (PHEV models)	301
Long-term storage of the vehicle (HEV models)	302

Technical data

Vehicle identification	306
Vehicle identification number	306
Engine number	307
Overall parameters	308
Power parameters	308
Tyre specifications	309
Wheel parameters	309
Brake parameters	309
Fluid parameters.....	310

Index

Alphabetical index	314
--------------------------	-----

1

Operation

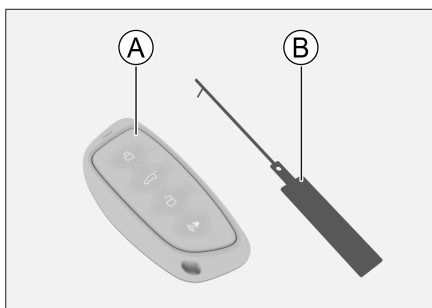
Keys	16
Door locks.....	21
Tailgate.....	25
Windows	29
Sunroof	33
Bonnet.....	38
Refuelling	40
Vehicle charging and discharging	43
Seats	53
Rearview mirrors	57
Steering wheel	59
Roof rack.....	60
Light control	62
Wiper control	69
A/C system.....	72
Mobile phone wireless charging	80
Interior equipment.....	82

Keys

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

About the key



Ⓐ Smart key

Ⓑ Key number tag

i NOTICE

This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

i NOTICE

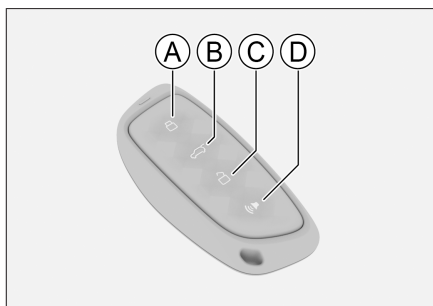
- › Store the key number tag in a safe place. The key number tag has a code necessary for getting a new mechanical key. You may only request for a new mechanical key from the authorised service centre by using this code.
- › When purchasing or transferring the vehicle, hand over the key number tag to the purchaser.

⚠ CAUTION

The smart key contains electronic components, and you should follow the following instructions to prevent damage to the smart key:

- › Do not place the key in a hot place, such as on the instrument panel.
- › Do not disassemble it randomly.
- › Do not use the key to strike other objects or drop it on the ground.
- › Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in an ultrasonic cleaner.
- › Do not keep the key together with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as mobile phones.

Button introduction



BC9CEC165C19

- Ⓐ Lock button
- Ⓑ Tailgate control button
- Ⓒ Unlock button
- Ⓓ Vehicle locating button

Lock button

Press the lock button to lock all the doors and the tailgate. In this case, turn signal lights will flash once.

i NOTICE

When the door is locked, check whether all the doors and the tailgate are completely closed if the turn signal lights do not flash.

Unlock button

Press the unlock button to unlock all the doors and the tailgate. In this case, the turn signal lights will flash twice.

i NOTICE

You can set key unlocking mode through the Vehicle settings → **【Vehicle】** → **【Door and lock】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › If the unlock mode is set to **【Driver only】**, press the unlock button to only unlock the driver door. At this time, press the unlock button to unlock all doors.
- › If the mode is set to **【All doors】**, when the unlock button is pressed, all doors are unlocked.

Vehicle locating button

When all doors and the tailgate are locked, press this button to activate the vehicle search function so that you can quickly find your vehicle in a parking lot. Press it again during the vehicle locating warning to deactivate the vehicle locating function.

You can set the find my car reminder function through the Vehicle settings → **【Lights】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Tailgate control buttons (power tailgate)

Press the tailgate control button twice within 2 s, and the tailgate will open automatically.

When the tailgate is completely opened, press the tailgate button to close the tailgate.

Keys

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not modify the transmission frequency, enlarge transmission power (including additionally installing a radio frequency power amplifier), connect an external antenna, or use other transmitting antennas without permission.
- › When using the function, do not cause harmful interference to all kinds of legitimate radio communication services. Once interference is detected, stop using the function and take measures to eliminate the interference before further use.
- › Using the function may be subject to interference from various radio devices, resulting in a brief failure of function.

Taking out the mechanical key

When operating, be sure to dry your hands thoroughly. If moisture touches the battery, it may cause the battery to rust.

1. Insert a small flat-headed screwdriver wrapped in cloth into the area indicated by the arrow, and pry the upper housing until the buckle is loose.



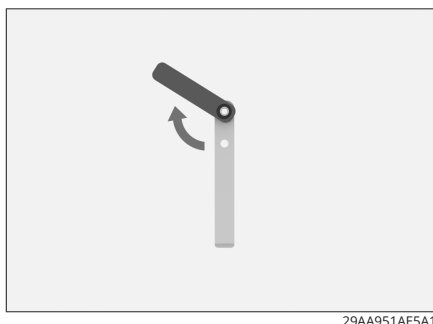
2. When one buckle is loose, slowly pry along the seam towards the left and right sides, and pry open all other buckles.



3. Remove the upper housing and take out the mechanical key.



4. Rotate the handle of the mechanical key for normal use.



i NOTICE

The handle of the mechanical key can only be rotated in one direction, and the maximum opening angle is about 135°.

A CAUTION

Some mechanical keys may not be in the smart key. When purchasing the vehicle, please confirm with your dealer.

Battery replacement

A WARNING

The vehicle key contains a button battery.

- › The button battery in the vehicle key is dangerous. Regardless it is a new battery or an old one, always keep it away from children.
- › If the button battery is swallowed or put into any part of the body, it may cause severe or fatal injury in 2 hours or less.
- › Seek medical attention if you suspect the battery is swallowed or placed in any part of the body.
- › Please dispose of used batteries according to local laws. Incorrect disposal of used batteries will damage the environment.

A CAUTION

- › During operation, be sure to dry your hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- › The smart key contains electronic components, which must be protected from damage to the smart key due to impact, high temperature, exposure to the sun, liquid, moisture, corrosion, etc.
- › Do not touch or move any other parts.
- › The positive and negative terminals of the battery must be installed correctly.

Keys

- › Be careful not to lose parts when replacing the battery.

4. Assemble the key and test whether all the key buttons can work normally.

1

Operation

1. Follow the steps to take out the mechanical key.(▷ Page 18)
2. Insert a small flathead screwdriver into the opening and gently pry the old battery inward and remove it.



E229C7D79336

3. To install the new battery, place one side of the battery into the battery case, and then press the other raised side firmly down into it.



BB11D8BFDCF7

When installing the battery, make sure that the positive terminal of the battery faces up.

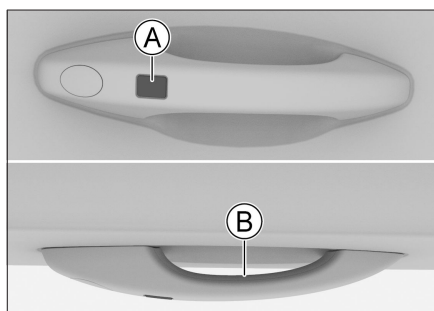
Battery model: CR2032

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Locking and unlocking the passive entry system

When carrying a smart key, use the passive entry system to lock and unlock the doors.



- Ⓐ Lock sensor
- Ⓑ Unlock sensor

Unlocking

Touch the unlock sensor to unlock all the doors and the tailgate. In this case, the turn signal lights will flash twice.

i NOTICE

You can set unlocking mode through the Vehicle settings → **【Vehicle】** → **【Windows】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › If it is set to **【Driver】**, when you touch the driver unlock sensor, only the driver door will be unlocked. At this time, if you touch the unlock sensor again, all doors will be unlocked.
- › If it is set to **【All doors】**, when you touch the unlock sensor, all doors will be unlocked.

Locking

Touch the lock sensor to lock all the doors and the tailgate. In this case, turn signal lights will flash once.

i NOTICE

When locking the doors, if the vehicle does not give feedback (no flashing lights or honking), please check that all doors and the tailgate are completely closed.

i NOTICE

- › Operate only the doors where the smart key is detected.
- › Do not lock and unlock the doors at the same time.
- › Operating the door handle with gloves may prevent the door from being unlocked or locked.

Door locks

1

Operation

- › The PEPS radio waves may be weak. Surrounding radio equipment or barriers can affect communication between the smart key and the vehicle, causing the system to malfunction.
- › After each successful locking or unlocking of the door, please wait 3 seconds before performing the next locking or unlocking operation.
- › After washing the vehicle in the cold season, please promptly wipe off any water stains on the gaps of the outer door handles. The accumulated water stains may freeze on the handle movement mechanism, causing the door handle to jam. For example, after the door handle is pulled up, it may not be able to return to its original position, resulting in the door not being able to close properly. In this case, you can repeatedly pull the door handle several times to remove ice buildup.

Locking and unlocking with key buttons

Refer to the Key button introduction.

(▷ Page 17)

Locking and unlocking with center control buttons



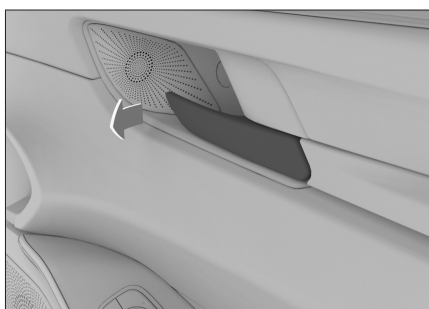
30B456D10480

The center control button is located on the driver's door. Press the central control buttons repeatedly to lock or unlock all doors.

If the button indicator lights up, it means the door is locked.

If the button indicator goes out, it means the door is unlocked.

Unlocking with the interior handle



C9B3783BF18A

When a vehicle door is locked, pulling the interior handle will unlock it. Pull the handle again to open the door.

i NOTICE

If the child lock is activated when opening the rear doors with the inner handle, the rear doors cannot be opened.

A CAUTION

After unlocking the door, you must first pull out the mechanical key to open the driver door.

Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key

1. Pull up the door handle and push the cover from the inside to remove it.



4D59819186F9

2. Insert the mechanical key into the door lock hole, and turn the key to lock or unlock the door.

For how to get the mechanical key, see Taking out the mechanical key.

(▷ Page 18)



E33784B08A67

Emergency lock



4E32A746DE2F

The front passenger door and the rear doors are equipped with the door emergency locking devices.

Insert the mechanical key into the emergency lock hole as shown in the figure, move the locking device to the lowest position according to the lever principle, and then close the door to lock it.

i NOTICE

If you need to use this method to lock the door, it means that the electric door lock system is faulty. In this case, please go to the authorised service centre for maintenance as soon as possible.

Door locks

Child lock

If there are children in the vehicle, we recommend that they sit on comparatively safer rear seats. The child locks are available with the rear doors to prevent inadvertent opening of the doors.



3AEFE94D475D

Move the lever in the direction of the arrow to activate the child lock. Move the lever in the opposite direction to deactivate the child lock.

⚠ WARNING


Only the rear doors are equipped with child locks. If a child sits alone on a rear seat, activate the child locks on both rear doors at the same time to avoid accidents caused by accidental opening of the doors.

i NOTICE

After activating the child lock, you can only open the door by pulling the door handle from outside.

Flameout unlocking

After the function is activated, all doors automatically unlock when the power supply mode is switched from ON to OFF mode.

You can activate or deactivate this function through the Vehicle settings  → **【Vehicle】** → **【Windows】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Auto lock

When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed, all doors and the tailgate will automatically lock.

i NOTICE

Make sure that all doors and the tailgate are completely closed before driving.

Automatic resetting

When the vehicle is locked, if the doors are unlocked from outside (using a method other than the mechanical key) and the power supply mode remains unchanged for a certain period of time, with all doors and the tailgate not being opened, all doors and the tailgate will automatically lock.

Automatic unlock upon collision

With power switch at ON position, when system detects collision, all doors will unlock automatically.

1

Operation

Power tailgate


Opening

For safety, please open the tailgate using the following methods with the vehicle stationary:

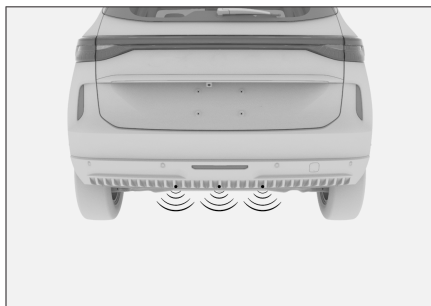
- › When the driver door is unlocked, press the tailgate button near the steering wheel.



D75B83A50B74

- › When the driver door is unlocked, press the micro-switch on the tailgate.
- › When you carry a smart key with you, press the micro-switch on the tailgate.
- › With the power supply in OFF mode, press the tailgate control button on the key twice within 2 s.
- › You can turn on or off the hands-free tailgate function through the Vehicle settings  → **【Vehicle】** → **【Windows】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

If you carry a smart key with you, kick in the detection zone under the rear bumper.



EEE16AEDE06A

Closing

- › Press the closing button on the tailgate.



80176EFA498D

- › Press the tailgate button near the steering wheel.
- › With the power supply in OFF mode, press the tailgate control button on the key.
- › Make a kicking motion in the detection zone under the rear bumper.

1

Operation

Tailgate

1

Operation

NOTICE

- › When making the kicking motion, your foot should be close to the rear bumper and your tiptoes should be at least 10 cm under the bumper but not touching the bumper. Then, quickly pull your foot back. Otherwise, you may not be able to open or close the tailgate.
- › If you move your foot left and right under the bumper, the tailgate may not open or close.
- › If you keep your foot in the kicked-out position under the bumper too long, or if you kick too slowly, the tailgate will not open or close. When this happens, please repeat the kicking motion at a faster speed.
- › If you have kicked several times and the tailgate still has not opened, wait a moment, and then try again.
- › You can also close the tailgate when you do not have a smart key with you by making a similar kicking motion in the detection zone under the rear bumper.

CAUTION

To prevent the tailgate from accidentally opening, be sure a smart key is not in the detection zone of the tailgate when washing the vehicle or using a high pressure washer.

WARNING

- › Be sure to kick only within the detection range of the sensor. Otherwise, you may get burnt by touching the exhaust system.
- › Be sure you are standing firmly on the ground when making the kicking motion, and maintain enough space between yourself and the back of the vehicle. Otherwise, you may lose your balance (for example, on an icy surface).
- › To prevent the tailgate from accidentally opening or closing, do not carry a smart key with you in the following situations:
 - Putting something down or picking something up behind the vehicle.
 - Polishing or doing other maintenance on the back of the vehicle.

WARNING

- › In certain situations, if you need to manually close the tailgate, be sure to push on it from the outside of the vehicle to make sure it closes all the way. Using the auxiliary handle to close the tailgate may easily pinch your hand and result in serious injury.
- › Never drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.
- › Never carry any passengers in the luggage area.

- › When opening or closing the tailgate with other persons standing in the vicinity of the tailgate, make sure that no injuries are caused to them.
- › When closing the tailgate, be careful not to catch any object like a bag or a necktie.
- › Do not allow children to operate the tailgate. Otherwise, an accidental injury may be caused.

⚠ CAUTION

- › In certain situations, if you need to manually open or close the tailgate, move it slowly and smoothly. Never exert sudden force to accelerate opening or closing of the tailgate.
- › Always be careful when opening the tailgate in strong wind. The strong wind can cause the tailgate to open too far and deform.
- › If the tailgate is frozen or covered in snow and ice, do not force it open. Use the A/C heating function to warm the interior of the vehicle, and then open the tailgate.

If you must open the tailgate in an emergency, pour warm water on it to melt the ice. Once the frozen spots loosen, try to open it.

- › Do not install or paste any ornaments onto the tailgate strut.
- › Do not pull sideways the tailgate; otherwise, the strut may be bent and deformed.

- › While the tailgate is opening or closing, do not use excessive force to make it move in the opposite direction. Failure to do so can cause injury and damage the tailgate.

i NOTICE

If the tailgate is in an open state or in the process of moving, and the battery is disconnected and then reconnected, the tailgate may not be electrically closed. In such a case, simply manually close the tailgate completely, and the electric closing function will return to normal.

i NOTICE

- › When the ambient temperature is lower than 0°C, the tailgate strut may not be able to automatically push the tailgate up. In this case, you can manually lift the tailgate to open it.
- › Do not install heavy accessories on the tailgate. Failure to do so can prevent the strut from smoothly pushing the tailgate up.

Anti-pinch function

If the tailgate encounters an obstacle during the automatic closing process, the tailgate will automatically return to its open position when the pressure reaches a certain value.

Tailgate

1

Operation

⚠ WARNING

- › Never test the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
- › At the moment when the tailgate is completely closed, the anti-pinch function will not work if something gets stuck.

Setting the opening angle

To set the opening angle of the tailgate, use the following steps:

1. Open the tailgate, adjust it to the height that you want and hold it there.
2. Press and hold the closing button on the tailgate until the vehicle gives a light signal. Then, the opening angle of the tailgate is set successfully.

Emergency unlock

1. Pry down the emergency cover plate at the bottom of inner side of the tailgate using a flathead screwdriver.



E54679D44D0F

i NOTICE

Wrap the head of the screwdriver with a cloth before removal.

2. Move the emergency opening device in the direction shown in the figure with a flathead screwdriver to open the tailgate.



49B02CAA18C8

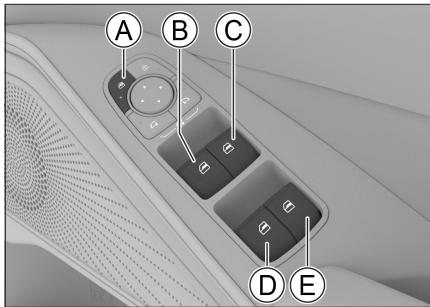
i NOTICE

In some cases, if you need to directly move the emergency opening device with your hands, try not to touch the sheet metal parts to avoid cutting your hands.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driver window switch



52AF19555215

- (A) Window lock switch
- (B) Front passenger window switch
- (C) Driver window switch
- (D) Rear left window switch
- (E) Rear right window switch

Manual operation

To lower or raise the window, gently press or pull up and hold the corresponding switch until the window reaches the proper position.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the heads and hands of all passengers are away from the window before raising the window. Otherwise, an extremely serious injury will be caused.

One-push raising or lowering

Press the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point, and then release the switch. At this time, the window will automatically lower completely. To stop it halfway, just pull up the switch.

Pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point, and then release the switch. At this time, the window will automatically raise completely. To stop it halfway, just press the switch.

⚠ CAUTION

In low-temperature environment, freezing may occur between the window glass and the window frame, resulting in the failure of the glass to move normally. In this case, do not force to operate it to avoid damage to the lift mechanism. After the interior temperature rises and the ice on the glass thaws, the glass can be raised and lowered normally.

Windows

1

Operation

Emergency raising

In the case of an emergency, pull up the window switch to make it exceed the pressure point and hold it, the window will trigger the emergency raising function, and the window anti-pinch function will not work at this time.

Locking windows

When the window lock switch is pressed, the window switches on the rear door cannot be used to control the corresponding windows.

Pressing the window lock switch again will recover the function of the rear window switches.

WARNING

When there are children in the vehicle, it is recommended that they should sit in the relatively safe rear seats and the window lock function should be enabled.

Passenger side window switches

On the handrail of the passenger side door, there is a window switch which can be used to open or close the corresponding window.

Thermal protection function

Thermal protection may be triggered to protect the glass lifter motor after repeated operation of the window switch. At this time, the window switch will temporarily fail. The window switch automatically returns to normal after the lifter motor cools down.

Anti-pinch function

During the process of raising the window, if there is an obstacle between the window frame and the window, when the pressure reaches a certain value, the window will stop raising and automatically descend a certain distance.

WARNING

- › Never test the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
- › At the moment when the window is completely raised, the anti-pinch function will not work if something gets stuck.
- › When the window triggers the emergency raising function, the window anti-pinch function will not work.

i NOTICE

- › Under severe conditions, such as low temperature and severe bumping, the anti-pinch function may be triggered in the process of window glass raising, and the window cannot be raised smoothly. At this time, pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point to close the window.
- › When the one-push raising or lowering function is abnormal, the anti-pinch function will be disabled at the same time, and initialization can be performed to restore it to normal.

Delay function

The windows can still be operated within a few seconds after switching the power supply to OFF.

One-push closing function


With the power supply in OFF mode and all the doors and the tailgate closed, press and hold the lock button on the key or the lock sensor on the door handle and all the windows will be automatically closed.

Press the key unlock or lock button to make a pause in the lift during automatic window raising.

i NOTICE

If an obstacle between the window glass and the window frame is found during the automatic raising of the window glass, the anti-pinch function will be triggered. The driver must confirm that the windows are completely closed before leaving.

Window settings

You can set windows through the Vehicle settings  → **【Vehicle】** → **【Windows】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Windows】** : you can set the window opening to fully closed, half open, or fully open.
- › **【Window closing settings】** : you can configure settings for closing windows on driving and for closing windows on lock.
 - 【Close windows on driving】** : all windows automatically close when the vehicle speed reaches 80 km/h for the first time.

Windows

1

Operation

【Close windows on lock】: once this function is activated, all windows will automatically close when the doors are locked. If the windows have not fully closed 10 seconds after locking the vehicle and raising the windows, the horn will beep three times and the turn signal lights will flash three times. At this point, it is advisable to check whether the windows are completely closed.

i NOTICE

- › If an obstacle between the window glass and the window frame is found during the automatic raising of the window glass, the anti-pinch function will be triggered. The driver must confirm that the windows are completely closed before leaving.
- › If the battery is disconnected and then reconnected, the window settings function may not be available. In this case, perform a window initialisation learning process.

2. Pull up the window switches equipped with one-push raising or lowering function beyond the pressure point until the window is completely closed and then hold for about 3 seconds.
3. Operate the window switch again so that the window goes through the one-push raising and one-push lowering.

i NOTICE

When the one-push raising or lowering function is disordered or every time the battery is disconnected and re-energized, the windows with one-push function need to be initialized.

Initialization

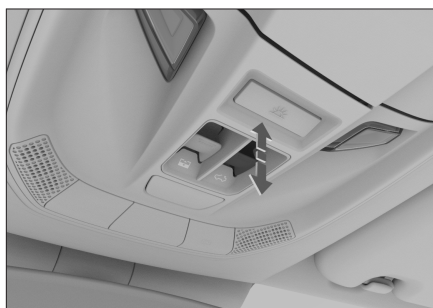
When errors occur in one-push raising or lowering function, you can reset it through the following operations:

1. Switch the power switch to ON mode.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Opening and closing the sunroof



8F381662804D

Manual operation

Press the sunroof open/close button and hold it, and the sunroof tilts to the maximum angle and stops. Press the sunroof open/close button again and hold it. After the sunroof slides to the maximum position, release the sunroof open/close button.

Pull up the sunroof open/close button and hold it. After the sunroof slides to completely closed, release the sunroof open/close button.

i NOTICE

When the sunroof is running, release the sunroof open/close button, and the sunroof stops moving.


Automatic operation

Press the sunroof open/close button and release it, and the sunroof automatically tilts to the maximum angle and stop. Press the button again and release it, and the sunroof automatically opens to the comfort position. Press the button again and release it, and the sunroof automatically opens completely.

Pull up the sunroof open/close button and release it, and the sunroof automatically closes.

i NOTICE

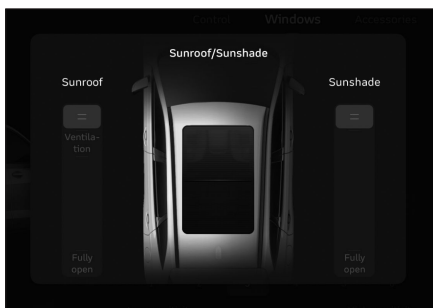
When the sunroof is running, operate the sunroof open/close button again, and the sunroof stops moving.

You can operate the sunroof control area to control the opening and closing of the sunroof and its opening degree through the  Vehicle settings → **【Vehicle】** → **【Windows】** → **【Sunroof/Sunshade adjustment】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Sunroof

1

Operation



DEA18CA7B7C5

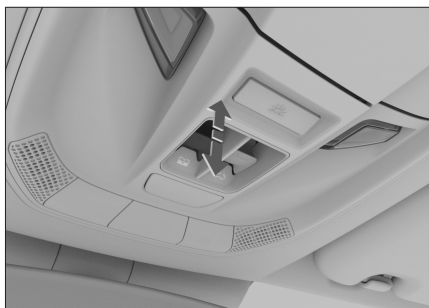
Touch or slide the sunroof control area to control its opening degree.

The top end indicates the sunroof fully closed, and the bottom end indicates the sunroof fully opened.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not extend your hands or head outside through the sunroof when driving. Accidental contact with exterior objects or emergency braking may cause severe injuries or even death.
- › To close the sunroof, be careful not to pinch other passengers' hands, head and neck etc. to prevent serious personal injuries.
- › Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

Opening and closing the sunshade



F25C33079349

Manual operation

Press the sunshade open/close button and hold it, and the sunshade gradually opens.

Pull up the sunshade open/close button and hold it, and the sunshade gradually closes.

i NOTICE

If you release the button while the sunshade is in operation, the sunshade stops moving.


Automatic operation

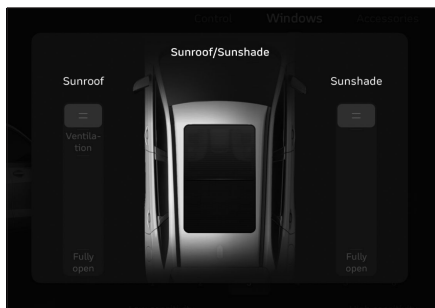
Press the sunshade open/close button and release it, and the sunshade automatically opens.

Pull up the sunshade open/close button and release it, and the sunshade automatically closes.

i NOTICE

If you operate the button again while the sunshade is in motion, the sunshade will stop moving.

You can operate the sunshade control area to control the opening and closing of the sunshade and its opening degree through the Vehicle settings  → **【Vehicle】** → **【Windows】** → **【Sunroof/Sunshade adjustment】** interface on the multimedia display screen.



DEA18CA7B7C5

Touch or slide the sunshade control area to adjust the opening degree of the sunshade.

The topmost position indicates the sunshade fully closed, and the bottommost position indicates the sunshade fully open.

! WARNING

- › When closing the sunshade, be careful not to pinch other passengers' hands, head and neck etc. to prevent serious personal injuries.

- › Do not allow children to operate the sunshade.

! CAUTION

- › Do not squeeze the sunroof shade with force, so as to prevent the sunshade from falling off or being damaged.
- › When parking a vehicle for a long time, close the sunroof sunshade to prevent the interior trim from being damaged due to the interior temperature rise if the vehicle is exposed to the sun for a long time.

Linkage function

In the process of opening the sunroof, the system will automatically adjust the opening degree of the sunshade according to the opening of the sunroof.

Anti-pinch function

If the sunroof or sunshade encounters an obstruction during the automatic closing, it will stop closing and return a certain distance.

! WARNING

- › Despite the anti-pinch function, there is still a risk of pinching.

Sunroof

1

Operation

In special cases (e.g. if the obstruction is thin), the closing process cannot be interrupted. Therefore, despite the anti-pinch function, it is important to ensure that the closing area of the sunroof and sunshade remains unobstructed.

- › Do not attempt to use any part of your body to test the anti-pinch function.
- › At the moment when the sunroof and sunshade are completely closed, the anti-pinch function will not work if any object is stuck.
- › When closing the sunroof and sunshade manually, the anti-pinch function will not work. Be careful not to pinch fingers or other body parts.

Delay function

Within a few seconds after switching the power to OFF mode, the sunroof and sunshade still can be operated.

One-push closing function

With the power supply in OFF mode, all doors and the tailgate closed, press and hold the lock button on the key to automatically close the sunroof.

WARNING

Make sure that heads, hands, necks and other parts of all occupants are away from the sunroof before using the easy closing function to close the sunroof. Otherwise serious injuries may occur.

NOTICE

If an obstacle between the window glass and the window frame is found during the automatic closing of the window glass, the anti-pinch function will be triggered. The driver must confirm that the windows are completely closed before leaving.

Automatic closing

- › When the power supply is in OFF mode, if the rainfall and light sensor senses rain or snow, etc., the sunroof will be automatically closed.

NOTICE

In case of the little rain, the sunroof may not automatically close. It must be confirmed that the sunroof is completely closed before leaving.

- › The sunroof closes automatically when the speed exceeds 120 km/h for more than 3 s.

Initialization

If the system is in disorder, it can be recovered through the following operations:

1. Close the sunroof and sunshade completely, press and hold the sunroof button until the sunroof and the sunshade jitter and then release the button.

2. Press and hold the sunroof button again within 5 seconds until the sunroof and sunshade complete the movement from being open to fully closed, then release the button, and the initialization is complete.

If the sunroof rebounds during the closing process, it can be forced to initialize through the following operations:

1. When the sunroof rebounds, press and hold the sunroof button immediately, and continue to keep pressing and holding the sunroof button after the rebound is over, until the sunroof is completely closed and jitters once, and then release the button.
2. Press and hold the sunroof button again within 5 seconds until the sunroof completes the movement from being open to fully closed, then release the button, and the sunroof initialization is completed.

If the sunshade rebounds during the closing process, it can be forced to initialize through the following operations:

1. First close the sunroof completely.
2. Then close the sunshade, and if it rebounds, immediately press and hold the sunshade button. After the rebound, continue to keep pressing and holding the sunshade button until the sunshade is completely closed and jitters once, and then release the button.

3. Press and hold the sunshade button again within 5 seconds until the sunshade completes the movement from being open to fully closed, then release the button, and the sunshade initialization is completed.

Bonnet

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

1

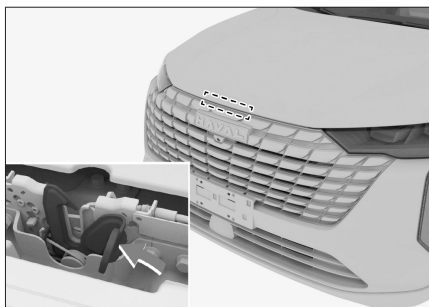
Operation

Opening

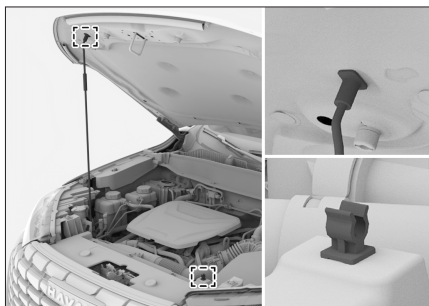
1. Pull the bonnet release handle located below the instrument panel. The bonnet will pop open gently.



2. Lift the bonnet slightly. Put your hand into the gap and move the bonnet lock handle in the direction of the arrow to open the bonnet.



3. Take the support pole out of the slot and insert the front end into the recess in the bonnet to prop it up.



i NOTICE

- › After opening the bonnet, the engine will automatically stop and will not start. Even if the traction battery is low, the vehicle will not start the engine and will automatically power off, preventing a switch to READY mode.
- › If the engine operation function is activated, the engine will not stop after the bonnet is opened.

Closing

1. Lift the bonnet upwards slightly.
2. Remove the strut and return it to its original position.
3. Release the bonnet at a height of about 30 cm from the bonnet lock and allow the bonnet to lower without aid.
4. Make sure the bonnet is fully locked.

WARNING

Make sure that the bonnet is fully closed and secured prior to driving. Otherwise, it may open unexpectedly during the driving, leading to an accident.

CAUTION

Before closing the bonnet, make sure that there is no debris left inside the engine compartment.

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Refuelling (PHEV models)

1. Stop the vehicle and then press the fuel tank door unlock button.

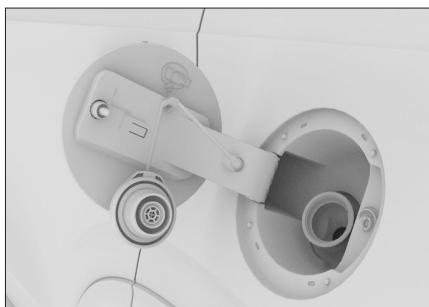


13145E51D7A7

i NOTICE

Refuelling should be completed within 18 minutes after the fuel tank door is opened, and the fuel tank door should not be closed. Otherwise, the isolating valve on the fuel tank will automatically close, resulting in unsmooth refuelling or fuel backwash. Press the fuel tank door unlock button again after the fuel has not been added for more than 18 minutes or after the fuel door has been closed during refuelling.

2. Press the fuel filler door near the rear of the vehicle, and it will gently pop open.
3. Turn the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to open it, and fix the fuel tank cap cable to the fuel tank door so as to avoid making the vehicle body dirty.



9E025F6D2927

⚠ WARNING

- › When loosening the fuel tank cap, do not continue if you hear a whooshing sound. Once the sound disappears, you can open it slowly.

In hot weather, high-pressure fuel may spray from the fuel tank filler due to excessive internal pressure, resulting in a personal injury.

- › Take care of such matters during refuelling:

No smoking or naked flames are allowed in the vicinity of the vehicle.

Never answer or make calls.

Adhere to all precautions posted at the petrol station.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not add too much fuel. Just add it until the first automatic stop of the fuel nozzle. Otherwise, the fuel can easily enter into the carbon canister, shortening its service life.
- › Do not allow fuel to splash on the vehicle while refuelling, as it may corrode the painted surfaces.
- › Only use the specified type of fuel.

4. After refuelling, put the fuel tank cap back to its original position and rotate it clockwise until you hear a “click” sound, indicating that the fuel tank cap is installed in place.

i NOTICE

The fuel tank cap must be installed in place. Otherwise, the engine malfunction warning light may turn on.

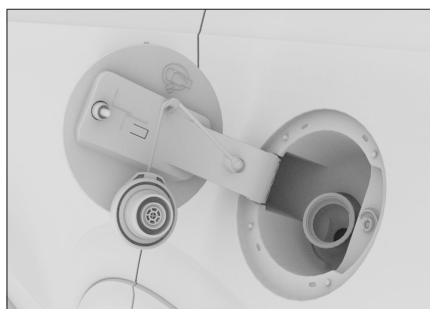
5. Close the fuel tank door.

⚠ CAUTION

Never close the fuel tank door violently, as this could damage the mechanism, preventing the fuel tank door from opening or closing properly.

Refuelling (HEV models)

1. When the driver door is unlocked, press the end of the fuel tank door near the rear end of the vehicle, and the fuel tank door will pop open gently.
2. Turn the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to open it, and fix the fuel tank cap cable to the fuel tank door so as to avoid making the vehicle body dirty.



⚠ WARNING

- › When loosening the fuel tank cap, do not continue if you hear a whooshing sound. Once the sound disappears, you can open it slowly.

Refuelling

1

Operation

In hot weather, high-pressure fuel may spray from the fuel tank filler due to excessive internal pressure, resulting in a personal injury.

- › Take care of such matters during refuelling:

No smoking or naked flames are allowed in the vicinity of the vehicle.

Never answer or make calls.

Adhere to all precautions posted at the petrol station.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not add too much fuel. Just add it until the first automatic stop of the fuel nozzle. Otherwise, the fuel can easily enter into the carbon canister, shortening its service life.
- › Do not allow fuel to splash on the vehicle while refuelling, as it may corrode the painted surfaces.
- › Only use the specified type of fuel.

3. After refuelling, put the fuel tank cap back to its original position and rotate it clockwise until you hear a “click” sound, indicating that the fuel tank cap is installed in place.

i NOTICE

The fuel tank cap must be installed in place. Otherwise, the engine malfunction warning light may turn on.

4. Close the fuel tank door.

⚠ CAUTION

Never close the fuel tank door violently, as this could damage the mechanism, preventing the fuel tank door from opening or closing properly.

Fuel information

Item	Data
Fuel specification	E20
Fuel tank capacity [L] (reference value)	55 (PHEV models) 61 (HEV models)

Vehicle charging and discharging

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Energy management (PHEV models)

Touch **【Energy management】** in the all apps interface to set functions related to charging and discharging.

- › **【Schedule charging】** : after activating the schedule charging function, the vehicle will charge within the start and end times you set. After disabling the schedule charging function, the vehicle will enter immediate charging mode, and charging can begin once the charging connector is properly connected.
- › **【Discharge】**
 - 【Vehicle to load discharge】** : connect the vehicle to the slow charging port using the vehicle to load discharge cable. Once the function is activated, the vehicle can supply power to other electrical devices.

i NOTICE

Once the function is activated, connect the discharging device within 5 minutes; otherwise, the function will deactivate automatically.

【Start the engine to generate power when the power is too low】 : after the function is turned on, when the traction battery level is too low due to the discharge function, the engine will automatically start to generate electricity to realize external discharge.

- › **【Battery pack thermal insulation】**

【Gun insertion insulation】 : this function can keep the battery pack temperature within a reasonable range to ensure battery performance while connected to a normal slow charging connector. Some charging cables or charging piles may not be able to realize this function. It is recommended to use AC charging cables or AC charging piles recommended by Great Wall Motor.

- › **【Charge display type】** : you can set the battery display type to either range or percentage.

Vehicle charging and discharging

1

Operation

⚠ CAUTION

- › When the vehicle is used for the first time or after it has been parked for a long time, there may be a deviation between the actual battery power and the value displayed on the instrument panel. Therefore, it is recommended to fully charge the vehicle before using it.
- › Regularly charging the vehicle can keep the traction battery in the best working condition. Please perform a full charge (SOC 100%) every week to ensure the accuracy of battery power estimation. Perform a full charge at a low battery (power $\leq 20\%$) every 2 to 3 months.

i NOTICE

- › When the traction battery is charged to a high level, it will enter the trickle charging state, resulting in an extended charging time at the end. Therefore, the estimated remaining charging time may differ from the actual time.
- › When the traction battery is low, the power performance of the vehicle will be diminished. Therefore, please charge the vehicle promptly.

Energy consumption information

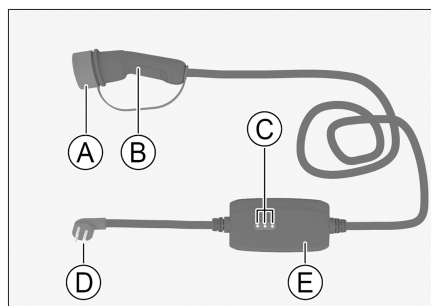
Touch **【Energy consumption】** in the all apps interface to view relevant information of energy consumption statistics.

【Trip statistics】 : you can view the trip information and related energy consumption of the vehicle after starting or resetting.

【Consumption statistics】 : you can view information related to vehicle fuel consumption and power consumption.

Ordinary charging cable

The charging cable stored above the luggage area cover.



- Ⓐ Dust cap
- Ⓑ Charging connector
- Ⓒ Indicator light
- Ⓓ Plug
- Ⓔ Control box

Vehicle charging and discharging

i NOTICE

For easy viewing at any time, the statement of indicator state and its precautions are marked at the back of control box.

! CAUTION

- › Before charging, make sure that the three-hole plug of the charging cable power supply is properly inserted into the socket. Otherwise, there is a risk of electric shock or ablation of the charging cable.
- › Charging is prohibited when the charging cable is damaged.
- › It is recommended to use the original charging cable. If other charging cables are used, the traction battery may not be charged normally and may cause a malfunction.
- › Do not disassemble, repair, or modify charging equipment (charging cable, charging port, etc.). Otherwise, charging breakdowns and fire may be caused.
- › Before starting the vehicle, ensure that the charging connector is completely disconnected from the vehicle to avoid damaging the charging equipment or the vehicle.
- › To prevent damage to the charging cable, pay attention to the following points:
Do not forcibly stretch, twist, bend, or step on the cable components.

The charging cable must not be placed near objects with high temperature such as heaters.

Do not use the charging cable in places where temperature is higher than 55°C or lower than -40°C. Do not store the charging cable in places where temperature is higher than 85°C or lower than -40°C.

Avoid direct sunlight or use it in humid places.

Slow charging (AC charging)

1. Stop the vehicle completely and shift to the P gear position.

i NOTICE

It is recommended to set the power supply mode to OFF for charging.

During charging, both low and high voltage power for the vehicle is supplied by the charging system. The use of the vehicle power consumption function (e.g. using the vehicle in ON mode) may prolong the charging time or increase the charging costs.

Vehicle charging and discharging

1

Operation

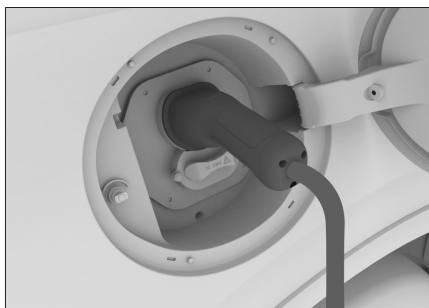
When charging is completed, the charging system will automatically disconnect. Then, the vehicle only has 12 V battery to provide low voltage power. If you need to use the power consumption function of the vehicle, pull out the charger and start the vehicle to set the vehicle in READY state. Then, the traction battery is in operation, providing high and low voltage power to the vehicle to prevent the vehicle from being inoperable due to the 12 V battery under-voltage.

2. When the driver door is unlocked, press one end of charging port cover near to the rear of vehicle and the charging port cover will pop open slightly.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not violently operate the charging port cover. Otherwise, the locking mechanism may deform and break, resulting in failure to open or close the charging port cover.
 - › Do not clean when the charging port cover is open.
3. Take out the charging cable, then take out the dust cover of the slow charging port and the charging connector, and insert the charging connector into the charging port to confirm that it is fully inserted.

The charging cable is stored above the luggage area cover.



24C2BE888438

i NOTICE

Do not make forced connection between the charging connector and the charging port if one or both have a foreign object inside. Contact the authorised service centre. Forced connection will damage the charging equipment and the vehicle. Use a blow dryer to defrost a frozen charging port. Forcibly connecting the charging connector when the port is frozen will cause a failure.

4. Insert the connector at the other end into power supply socket.

If normal charging cannot be achieved, refer to the indicator light description on the charging cable control box.

⚠ WARNING

- › A circuit breaker must be installed on the power supply side, and you must use a socket that matches the charging cable supplied with the vehicle.

Vehicle charging and discharging

1

Operation

- › For the charging circuit, avoid excessive line connectors and adapters, and refrain from using excessively long cables. Prevent the abnormal heating and electric leakage from causing fire or electric shocks.

5. After charging, unlock the door, pull out the charging connector, cover the dust cap, and close the charging port cover.

NOTICE

When you cannot pull out the charging connector smoothly, please do not operate it violently. You can try to lock the door first, then unlock the door, and then pull out the charging connector.

6. Take out the connector and close the dust cap of the charging connector. Place the charging cable back in its original position.

WARNING

- › If a medical device like a cardiac defibrillator is implanted in the body, confirm with the device manufacturer whether normal operation of the medical device will be affected before charging.

- › It is not recommended to have passengers in the vehicle during charging. Individuals with implanted medical devices, such as a cardiac defibrillator, may be affected by the vehicle charging. Therefore, it is advisable to ensure that they are not near the vehicle during charging and refrain from entering the vehicle.

- › Before charging, make sure that there is no water or other foreign objects in the vehicle charging port, the socket, the power supply device, and the charging connector. Also, check whether the metal terminals are not rusted or ablated, and whether the lock hook is damaged. If there is an anomaly, do not charge. Because the abnormal terminal connection may cause a short circuit or an electric shock, resulting in vehicle damage, and threatening life safety.

- › The charging device should be placed out of the reach of children. Children and other people in need of care must not perform charging operations.
- › In case of severe weather such as rain and snow, charging the vehicle in the open air is prohibited. After charging, make sure that there are no water stains on your hands or the charging port before disconnecting the charging device to avoid the risk of electric shock.

Vehicle charging and discharging

1

Operation

CAUTION

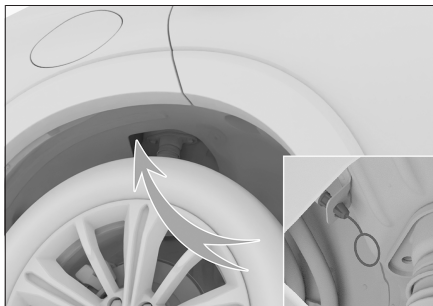
- › It is prohibited to use fast charging and slow charging simultaneously.
- › Do not directly pull out the charging connector during charging. To stop charging, disconnect the charging power supply first and then pull out the charging connector. Otherwise, the charging port may be damaged and the vehicle cannot be charged.
- › During charging, if you find peculiar smell or smoke, you must stop charging immediately.
- › Disconnect high-power electrical equipment during charging to maintain charging efficiency.
- › Do not use power generation equipment with unstable voltage for charging, as it may lead to a vehicle accident.
- › The charging time can be affected by the external temperature. High temperature and low temperature can prolong the charging time. The power supply cannot charge when the temperature of cell is lower than -20°C.
- › During charging, both low and high voltage power are supplied by the charging system. Using electrical equipment will prolong the charging time.
- › Once the charging is completed, the high voltage system will automatically disconnect, and the vehicle will only have low voltage power supplied by the 12 V battery. To utilize all the functions of the vehicle, disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and start the engine.
- › Never close the charging port cover violently, as this could damage the mechanism, preventing the cover from opening or closing properly.
- › Please close the charging port cover completely before locking the vehicle door. Otherwise, the charging port cover may be stuck and cannot be opened. If this case happens, please try to press the charging port cover, and then press the unlock button on the key.

Emergency unlock

After the slow charging is completed, if you are unable to pull out the charging connector normally, you can try to do so by following the steps below:

Vehicle charging and discharging

1. Pull the unlock cable located near the rear right shock absorber.



727BDB52085D

2. Press the unlock button on the top of the charging connector and pull out the charging connector.

i NOTICE

- › The emergency unlock cable is only for emergency use when the charging connector locking device during slow charging has a fault. Frequent use will damage the emergency unlock device.
- › If the charging connector can only be pulled out with the emergency unlock cable, the charging connector locking device may be faulty. Please go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for repairs.
- › If you cannot unplug the charging connector by using the emergency unlock cable, the charging device may be faulty. Please do not operate the emergency unlock cable frequently. Contact the charging device operator for assistance.

Fast charging (DC charging)

Before fast charging, read the relevant operating instructions on the charging device carefully, and strictly comply with the relevant regulations of the charging station.

1. Stop the vehicle completely and shift to the P gear position.

i NOTICE

It is recommended to set the power supply mode to OFF for charging.

During charging, both low and high voltage power for the vehicle is supplied by the charging system. The use of the vehicle power consumption function (e.g. using the vehicle in ON mode) may prolong the charging time or increase the charging costs.

After the charging is completed, the charging system will automatically disconnect. At this point, the vehicle will only receive low-voltage power supply from the 12 V battery. To use the vehicle's power consumption function, please pull out the charging connector and start the vehicle to set it in the READY state. At this time, the traction battery will be in operation, providing high-voltage and low-voltage electrical energy to the vehicle to prevent the vehicle from being unusable due to the insufficient power of the 12 V battery.

1

Operation

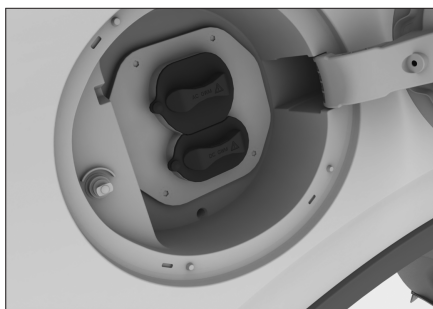
Vehicle charging and discharging

1

Operation

2. When the driver door is unlocked, press the end of the charging port cover near to the back of vehicle to pop open the charging port cover slightly.

3. Take out the dust cover of the charging port.



75FB9C39309E

4. Strictly follow the operating instructions on the charging device.

i NOTICE

Do not make forced connection between the charging connector and the charging port if one or both have a foreign object inside. Contact the authorised service centre. Forced connection will damage the charging equipment and the vehicle. Use a blow dryer to defrost a frozen charging port. Forcibly connecting the charging connector when the port is frozen will cause a failure.

5. After charging, unlock the door, pull out the charging connector, cover the dust cap, and close the charging port cover.

i NOTICE

- › After charging, when you cannot pull out the charging connector smoothly, please do not operate it violently. You can try to lock the door first, then unlock the door, and then pull out the charging connector.
- › Using the fast charging frequently will shorten the battery service life, so normal charging is recommended.
- › You should ensure the charging connector is connected properly; otherwise, the lithium battery cannot be charged or the charging equipment may be damaged.

⚠ WARNING

- › If a medical device like a cardiac defibrillator is implanted in the body, confirm with the device manufacturer whether normal operation of the medical device will be affected before charging.

Vehicle charging and discharging

- › It is not recommended to have passengers in the vehicle during charging. Individuals with implanted medical devices, such as a cardiac defibrillator, may be affected by the vehicle charging. Therefore, it is advisable to ensure that they are not near the vehicle during charging and refrain from entering the vehicle.
- › Before charging, make sure that there is no water or other foreign objects in the vehicle charging port, the socket, the power supply device, and the charging connector. Also, check whether the metal terminals are not rusted or ablated, and whether the lock hook is damaged. If there is an anomaly, do not charge. Because the abnormal terminal connection may cause a short circuit or an electric shock, resulting in vehicle damage, and threatening life safety.
- › The charging device should be placed out of the reach of children. Children and other people in need of care must not perform charging operations.
- › In case of severe weather such as rain and snow, charging the vehicle in the open air is prohibited. After charging, make sure that there are no water stains on your hands or the charging port before disconnecting the charging device to avoid the risk of electric shock.

CAUTION

- › It is prohibited to use fast charging and slow charging simultaneously.
- › Do not directly pull out the charging connector during charging. To stop charging, disconnect the charging power supply first and then pull out the charging connector. Otherwise, the charging port may be damaged and the vehicle cannot be charged.
- › During charging, if you find peculiar smell or smoke, you must stop charging immediately.
- › Disconnect high-power electrical equipment during charging to maintain charging efficiency.
- › Do not use power generation equipment with unstable voltage for charging, as it may lead to a vehicle accident.
- › The charging time can be affected by the external temperature. High temperature and low temperature can prolong the charging time. The power supply cannot charge when the temperature of cell is lower than -20°C.
- › During charging, both low and high voltage power are supplied by the charging system. Using electrical equipment will prolong the charging time.

Vehicle charging and discharging

1

Operation

- › Once the charging is completed, the high voltage system will automatically disconnect, and the vehicle will only have low voltage power supplied by the 12 V battery. To utilize all the functions of the vehicle, disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and start the engine.
- › Never close the charging port cover violently, as this could damage the mechanism, preventing the cover from opening or closing properly.

Vehicle to load discharge method

Before the vehicle to load discharge, the following conditions should be met:

- › The P gear position is engaged.
- › There is no voltage fault in the vehicle.
- › You can touch **【Vehicle to load discharge】** to activate the vehicle to load discharging function in the **【Energy management】** interface on the multi-media display screen.

i NOTICE

Once the function is activated, connect the discharging device within 5 minutes; otherwise, the function will deactivate automatically.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Headrest

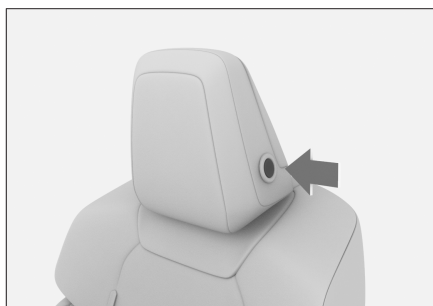
Headrest adjustment

When the headrest center height is aligned with the top of the driver's or passenger's ears, it is at maximum efficiency.

WARNING

The headrest must not be adjusted while the vehicle is being driven.

Front seat headrests



7EDD23BC90D0

Rear seat headrests



FB7265D0C9CF

- › To raise the headrest, directly pull it upwards to the desired position.
- › To lower the headrest, press down on the headrest while pressing and holding the headrest adjust button until the headrest reaches the desired position.

NOTICE

The lowest position of the headrest is not its use position. The headrest must be ascended to the locked position before use.

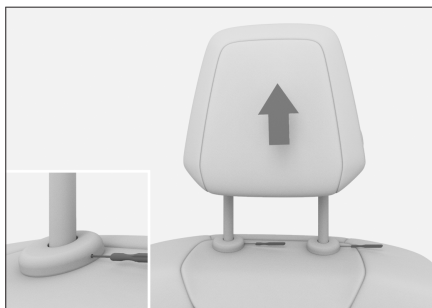
NOTICE

After adjusting the headrest, press the headrest to make sure it is locked firmly.

Seats

Remove headrest

Front seat headrests



After raising the headrest, one person uses two thin screwdrivers to press the keyhole while the other person can pull the headrest upward.

If necessary, adjust the seat backrest so that the headrest can be removed.

Rear seat headrests

To remove the headrest, press and hold the headrest adjust button, and remove the headrest.

If necessary, adjust the seat backrest so that the headrest can be removed.

⚠ CAUTION

After the headrest is installed, push it up or down to make sure that it has been locked in place.

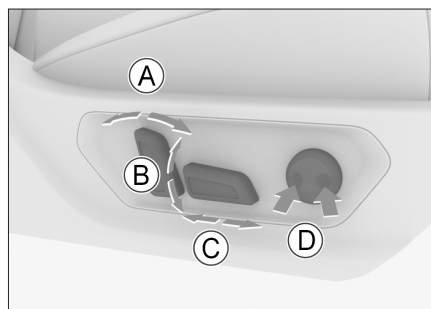
⚠ WARNING

The headrest must not be removed while the vehicle is being driven. If this is done and a collision occurs, the neck of the driver or passenger neck will be subject to major strain, potentially resulting in serious injury or even death.

Power seat

⚠ WARNING

- › Never adjust the seat when driving.
- › Before driving, please adjust the seat to a position convenient for correct driving. Otherwise, it may easily cause incorrect operations and may even lead to accidents, and the safety efficiency of seat belts, airbags, headrest and other devices cannot be effectively used.
- › Do not tilt the seat backrest excessively because your body may slip out of the safety belt during collision. The seat belts can provide the best protection only when you sit up straight and lean against the seat backrest.



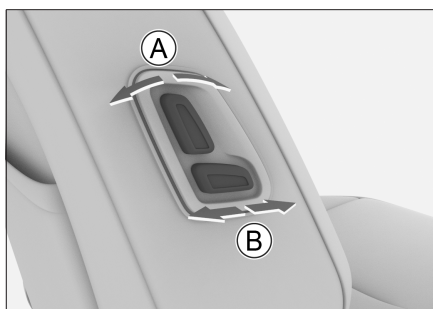
- Ⓐ Backrest inclination angle adjustment
- Ⓑ Seat height adjustment
- Ⓒ Forwards/backwards adjustment of the seats
- Ⓓ Lumbar support adjustment
Press the front or back of the button to reinforce or weaken the lumbar support.

i NOTICE

Some functions only apply to the driver's seat.

Convenient adjustment of front passenger seat

The convenient adjustment switch is located on the inner side of the front passenger seat backrest (between the two front seats). The driver or rear passenger can adjust the position of the front passenger seat through the convenient adjustment switch.



- Ⓐ Backrest inclination angle adjustment
- Ⓑ Adjustment of front and rear positions

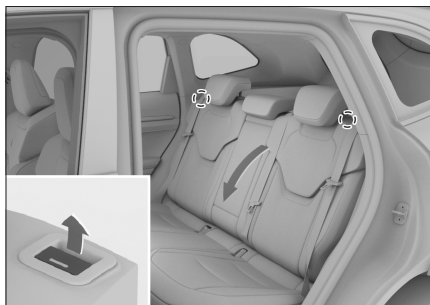
Rear seat adjustment

Backrest folding

After the rear seat backrest is folded, larger storage space can be obtained. The left or right part of the backrest can be folded separately.

i NOTICE

- › Before folding, adjust the headrest to an appropriate position to avoid interference with the seat cushion or front seat.
- › Put the seat belt back in place to avoid interference when folding the backrest.



A5D71999131D

The unlocked backrest can be folded forwards by pulling up the unlocking handle at the top of the backrest.

! CAUTION

- › Remove all objects from the seat before folding the seat backrest.
- › Do not place heavy objects on the folded backrest.

Seats

WARNING

- › Never adjust or fold the seat while the vehicle is running.
- › No one is allowed to sit on a folded seat backrest or in the luggage area.
- › Children are prohibited from entering the luggage area.

1

Operation


Backrest restoring

1. Adjust the seat belt to avoid it being stuck under the seat during backrest recovery.
2. Pull up the backrest and return it to the original position for use. Shake the seat backrest slightly back and forth to confirm that it is locked in place.

Seat setting

Seat ventilation

In the A/C setting interface, touch the **【Seat】** button to set the function of the corresponding seat in the pop-up lower-level interface.

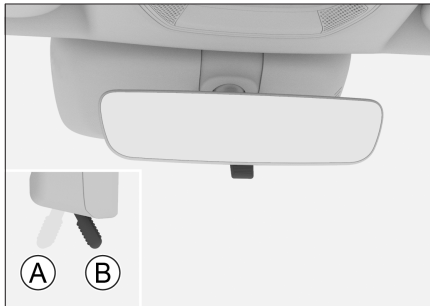
- › Touch the ventilation button  on the appropriate seat position to activate or deactivate the seat ventilation function and adjust the air volume gear.

Rearview mirrors

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Manual anti-glare interior rearview mirror

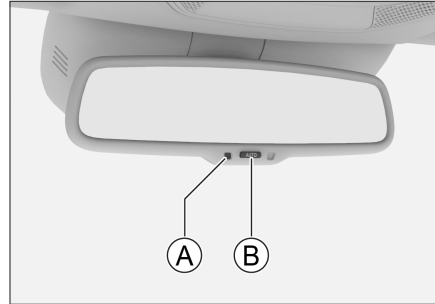


762A30BAD79

- Ⓐ Normal position
- Ⓑ Anti-glare position

Toggle the handle to the rear of the vehicle to access the anti-glare position. The reflection from the headlights of the vehicle behind can be reduced at that position.

Automatic anti-glare inside rearview mirror



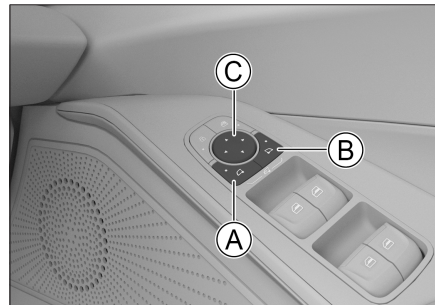
0CD5669561F6

- Ⓐ Indicator
- Ⓑ Switch

Turn the ignition switch to ON mode and then automatic anti-glare function is defaulted to be in ON status. Press the switch, and you can turn on or turn off the automatic anti-glare function.

If the indicator is on, it means that the automatic anti-glare function is on and the inside rearview mirror will automatically reduce the reflection according to the light intensity of the headlamp of the vehicle behind.

Mirror adjustment



6D1FFA8D70DA

- Ⓐ Left side mirror select button

1

Operation

Rearview mirrors

Ⓑ Right side mirror select button

Ⓒ Mirror adjustment button

Mirror adjustment

1. Press the side mirror select button to select the left (L) or right (R) side mirror. If the button indicator light turns on, the mirror has entered the selected state.
2. Press the front, rear, left and right positions of mirror adjustment button to adjust the angle of the left or right side mirror.
3. After the adjustment, press the side mirror select button again, the button indicator light will turn off and the mirror exits the selected state.


Electric folding

- › Press the two side mirror selection buttons at the same time, the side mirrors will then fold automatically. Press it again, and the side mirrors will unfold automatically.

WARNING

- › Before driving, you must unfold the side mirrors and adjust them appropriately.
- › Be careful of your fingers when adjusting the side mirrors to avoid injury or damage to the side mirrors.
- › Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. Otherwise, errors in control can lead to accidents and serious injuries or death.

Side mirrors settings

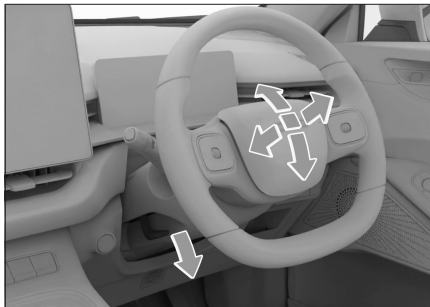
You can enter the side mirror setting interface through the Vehicle settings  → **【Vehicle】** → **【Control】** → **【Side mirrors】** Interface on the multimedia display screen .

- › **【Side mirrors folded】** : you can activate or deactivate the side mirrors folded functions.
- › **【Fold when locked】** : after activating this function, the folding and unfolding of the side mirrors are linked to the locking and unlocking of the door.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Adjustment method



C991CDACA704

1. Release the adjustment lever beneath the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to align it to your chest and make sure you can see all the instruments and indicator lights on the instrument panel.
3. After adjusting, secure the adjustment lever to lock the steering wheel in place.

WARNING

- › Never adjust the steering wheel during vehicle running. Otherwise, serious injuries or death may result from an accident caused by control errors.
- › Ensure that the steering wheel is locked firmly in place after adjusting it. Otherwise, serious injuries or death may result from an accident caused by sudden movement of the steering wheel.

Horn

Press the horn mark on the steering wheel or its surrounding area and the horn honks.

CAUTION

- › There is a front airbag inside the steering wheel. Do not hit the position around the horn hard to avoid the condition that the airbag cannot work normally during accident or the airbag is accidentally deployed in normal driving, which will cause serious injuries or even death to passengers.
- › Do not install any decorations on the steering wheel horn.

Roof rack

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Roof rack

To install a luggage rack on the roof rack, please read carefully the installation manual that comes with the luggage rack.

i NOTICE

When the luggage rack is installed or used for carrying items, relevant requirements of local traffic regulations should be observed.

Roof rack bearing capacity

The maximum load weight of the roof rack is 50 kg; the maximum load weight of the roof rack is 35 kg when the vehicle is decelerating rapidly.

i NOTICE

The load weight of the roof rack includes accessories such as the beam and other accessories.

⚠ WARNING

- › Items on the roof luggage rack must be secured firmly in place. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.
- › Loading goods on the roof luggage rack will raise the vehicle centre of gravity. Avoid high speed driving, sudden startup, sharp turns, emergency braking or abrupt operation. Failure to do so may cause loss of control or overturn of the vehicle due to incorrect operation of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death.
- › When rather heavy or large objects are loaded on the roof luggage rack, changes in the vehicle centre of mass and wind resistance may affect its driving performance, and there is a risk of an accident. Therefore, you must adjust your driving style and speed according to the specific circumstances.
- › Drive at a low speed in lateral wind. The vehicle profile and its high centre of gravity make it more sensitive to lateral gust, and reducing the vehicle speed will make it easier to control.
- › Do not overspeed, jolt, make sharp turns, hit objects, etc. when driving off-road or in uneven terrain. This can cause loss of control or overturn of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death, as well as serious damage to the suspension and chassis of the vehicle.

Roof rack

- › Do not cross steep slopes, and it is better to drive straight up or down. The vehicle is more likely to roll over than to roll forward or backward.
-

1

Operation

Light control


1

Operation

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Light settings

You can set the functions related to the lighting through the Vehicle settings  → **【Lights】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Active welcome light】** : after this function is activated, the auto headlights are on. If the current light intensity reaches the low beam turning on condition, the exterior lights will automatically turn on for a period of time after the doors are successfully unlocked outside the vehicle (except for the doors unlocked by the mechanical key).
- › **【Power-saving delay】** : you can set the time delay for the power-saving function to take effect.


After the power supply is switched to OFF mode, if the power supply mode and the door lock state do not change within the set time range, the power saving function will be automatically activated to save power.



- › **【Dome lights delay】** : you can set the delay time for the interior lights to turn off after all doors are closed when the interior lights are on due to the door control function.
- › **【Follow me home delay】** : you can set the continuous lighting time of the position lights and the low beam headlights after the follow me home delay function is triggered.

The power supply is switched to OFF mode, and the auto headlight switch is turned on. If the current light intensity reaches the low beam turning on condition, after opening the driver door, the position lights and low beam headlights will automatically turn on for a period of time to ensure that you can leave the vehicle in a dark environment.

- › **【Find my car reminder】** : you can set the vehicle prompt status when the find my car function is activated.

Light control



You can turn on or off the common lights through the Vehicle settings  → **【Common】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › Touch the 【OFF】 button to manually turn off the position lights and low beam headlights.
- › Touch the position light button  to turn on the position lights manually.
- › Touch the rear fog light button  to turn on or off rear fog lights.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the position lights instead of the low beam headlights when driving. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.

The position lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road in front of your vehicle. Therefore, turn on the low beam headlights when it's dark or visibility is poor.

- › Touch the low beam headlight button  to turn on the low beam headlight manually.
- › Touch the button  to activate or deactivate the auto headlight function. After the function is activated, the position lights and low beam headlights will automatically turn on or off according to the brightness of the surrounding environment.


⚠ CAUTION

- › During the day, if heavy fog reduces visibility, the lights may not automatically turn on. Turn on the lights manually in this case.
- › Auto light control can only assist the driver. At all times, the driver should be responsible for the lighting of the vehicle.

Auto headlights



3C5791DD4D4A

Press the auto headlight button  on the combination switch to activate or deactivate the auto headlight function. After the function is activated, the position lights and low beam headlights will automatically turn on or off according to the brightness of the surrounding environment.

⚠ CAUTION

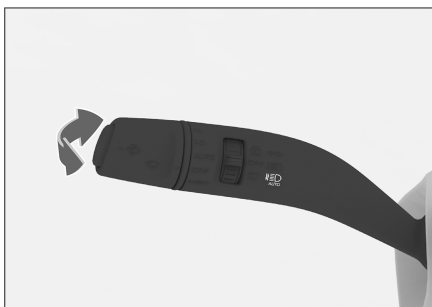
- › During the day, if heavy fog reduces visibility, the lights may not automatically turn on. Turn on the lights manually in this case.
- › Auto light control can only assist the driver. At all times, the driver should be responsible for the lighting of the vehicle.

Light control



Automatic high and low beam


1


Operation



The automatic high and low beam function can automatically switch to high/low beam headlights based on current vehicle speed and the brightness of the surrounding environment.

When the low beam headlights are on, the automatic high and low beam indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turns on through the Vehicle settings  → **【Common】** → **【Automatic high and low beam】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › Press the light control combination switch in the direction away from the steering wheel to turn on high beam headlights and exit the automatic high and low beam function, and the automatic high and low beam indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turns off.

Press the light control combination switch again in the direction away from the steering wheel to activate the function of automatic high and low beam headlights, and the indicator light (green) of the auto switch between low and high beam headlights  on the instrument panel will turn on.

- › Pull up the light control combination switch in the direction of the steering wheel and then release it to exit the automatic high and low beam function.

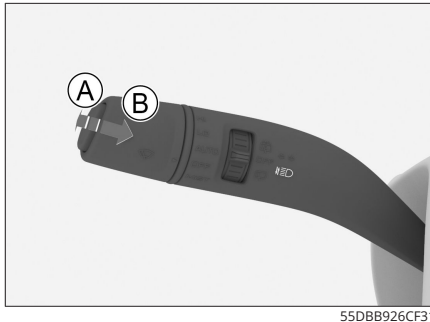
WARNING

The automatic high and low beam function is only an auxiliary function. The driver should manually switch between high and low beam headlights according to the light and visibility conditions if necessary in traffic or weather conditions. Manual intervention is required in the following cases:

- › Weather conditions are not conducive to driving, such as heavy fog or rain or snow.
- › Turn sharply or drive on the slope.
- › Drive at a junction or the opposite traffic cannot be seen completely, such as when the light of the opposite traffic is obscured by a collision barrier or when you are travelling on motorway.
- › Drive in areas with poor lighting conditions and many buildings.

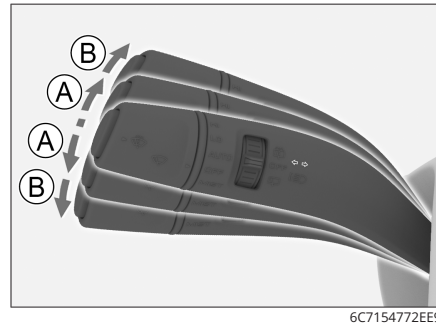
- › There are traffic participants with poor lighting around the road, such as pedestrians or non-motorized vehicles.
 - › There are highly reflective objects near the road, such as traffic signs.
 - › The rain light sensor on the current windscreen is dirty, frosted or covered by labels.
- › Pull the light control combination switch upwards in the direction of the steering wheel to turn on the high beam headlights. When released, the switch will automatically return to its original position, and the high beam headlights will turn off. Repeat this operation to make high beam headlights flash.

Manual low-high beam



- Ⓐ High beam headlights on
 - Ⓑ High beam headlights flashing
- › When the low beam headlights are on, press the light control combination switch away from the steering wheel to turn on or off the high beam headlights. The switch will automatically return to its original position when you release it.

Steering signal and lane change signal



- Ⓐ Lane change signal
 - Ⓑ Steering signal
- › Lane change signal: slightly move the light control combination switch upwards or downwards and release it. Then, the combination switch will automatically return to its original position, and the corresponding turn signal light will flash 3 times.

Light control

1

Operation

- › Steering signal: move the light control combination switch upwards or downwards and then release it. The combination switch will return automatically to its original position, and the corresponding turn signal light will flash continuously. When the turn is finished, the turn signal light will turn off. Slightly move the light control combination switch upwards or downwards to manually turn off the turn signal light.

Emergency flasher switch




169F8D1BABE1

In case of vehicle breakdown or traffic incidents, turn on the emergency flashers to remind other vehicles.

Press the switch to turn on or off the emergency flashers.

Hazard warning lights on with emergency braking

You can activate or deactivate this function through the Vehicle settings  →

【Drive】 → **【Hazard flashers on with emergency braking】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

After the function is activated, when the vehicle speed exceeds 50 km/h, if you brake the vehicle urgently, the hazard warning lights will flash several times to prompt the vehicles behind you to avoid it in time.

Daytime running light

To allow other drivers to see your vehicle more clearly, the daytime running lights automatically turn on when the vehicle is started and the P gear position is exited.

The daytime running lights will go out in the following conditions:

- › The headlights are on.
- › The P gear position is engaged.
- › When the left or right indicator is on, the daytime running light on the corresponding side will go out.

WARNING

- › The daytime running lights are not designed for the needs of night-time driving.
- › The driver is always obliged to ensure that the vehicle is travelling with the correct lights in compliance with traffic laws.

Light height adjustment



1685765A7BFA

The headlight beam height is adjusted according to the number of passengers and the load of the vehicle.

- › Turn the knob upwards to raise the height of the headlight beam.
- › Turn the knob downwards to lower the height of the headlight beam.



Reading light

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the interior lights for a long time when the vehicle is not started. Otherwise, the drained battery may be caused.



62BFEC4C6806



- › Press the main reading light switch  to turn on or off the reading lights.
- › Press the door control switch  to activate or deactivate the door control function.

With the door linked function enabled, the reading light will turn on or turn off automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding environment and the door condition.

Side roof light



272173CA18CF

Press the roof light switch  or  to turn on or off the corresponding roof light.

With the door linked function enabled, the reading light will automatically turn on or off according to the brightness of the surrounding environment and the door condition.

Light control

Center roof light

1

Operation



AE413216A945

- › Push the switch to OFF position: roof light off.
- › Turn the switch to the middle position. The door control function is activated, and the roof light will automatically turn on or off according to the brightness of the surrounding environment and the state of the door.
- › Push the switch to ON position: roof light on.

Luggage area lights

When the tailgate is open or closed, the luggage area lights turn on or off automatically.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Front wiper

Front wiper position



› Front wiper mist (MIST)

Turn the front wiper control knob to the MIST position and release it, it will return automatically, and the front wiper will wipe once.

› Front wiper off (OFF)

Turn the front wiper control knob to the OFF position and the front wiper will be turned off.

› Automatic wipe (AUTO)

Turn the front wiper control knob to the AUTO position and the front wiper will automatically wipe according to the amount of rain.

⚠ WARNING

- › The rainfall and light sensor may not fully recognise each fall of rain and activate the front wiper. If the rain on the windscreen affects the vision, you should manually adjust the front wiper position or wiping frequency duly as required.
- › When the automatic front wiper is in the AUTO position, the front wiper may operate unexpectedly if the windscreen near the interior rearview mirror is touched from outside or the windscreen is vibrated. Be careful not to get your fingers and other parts of your body caught in front wipers.
- › Do not place the automatic front wiper in the AUTO position when you wash your vehicle or no front wiper is required to be used. Otherwise, the front wiper may operate unexpectedly.

⚠ CAUTION

- › If the surface of the windscreen near the interior rearview mirror is dirty or has any foreign object (snow, gum, etc.), clean it first and remove the foreign object; otherwise it may affect the normal work of the auto wiper.

Wiper control

1

Operation

› Sometimes, even if snowflakes come in contact with the rainfall and light sensor, the sensor may not operate normally and front wiper may not function, as snowflakes come in different shapes. The melted snow may cause the front wiper to automatically operate.

› Low speed wipe (LO)

Turn the front wiper control knob to the LO position and the front wiper will wipe at low speed.

› High speed wipe (HI)

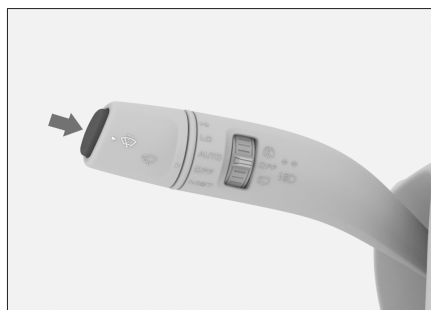
Turn the front wiper control knob to the HI position and the front wiper will wipe at high speed.

⚠ CAUTION

- › If the surface of the windscreen is dirty or has any foreign object (snow, gum, etc.), clean it first and remove the foreign object. Otherwise, the wiper blades or the internal structure of the wipers may be damaged.
- › Before using the wipers in cold weather, be sure to check whether the wiper blades are frozen on the windscreen. If the wiper blades have been frozen on the windscreen, use them after unfreezing. Otherwise, the wiper blades and wiper motor may be damaged.

- › When the wipers stop running due to snow and other reasons, please turn off the wipers and park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible, and then remove snow and other debris so that the wipers can work normally.

Washing function



Press and hold the washer button on the top. The front wipers will wipe the front windscreen with windscreen washer fluid. Release the washer button and the wipers will automatically return to their original positions.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Avoid using the washer continuously for a long time. Otherwise, the washer motor may be damaged.
- To protect the washer motor, the washer may automatically shut down after a period of continuous operation.

- › When the washer fluid is insufficient, replenish it. In the cold weather, add appropriate washer fluid to ensure that it will not freeze. Otherwise, not only the washing function will not be available, but also the related parts will be frozen.
- › Do not use products that can produce coatings on the windscreen (cleaning solutions for crystal plating or coating, glass coatings, etc.). Otherwise, abnormal vibration and noise may occur during the wipe by the wipers.
- › The blades should not come into contact with oily cleaning agents, as they may react chemically and cause deformation.
- › Turn and hold the rear wiper control knob to the rear windscreen cleaning position (🌀). The rear wiper will wipe the rear windscreen by using the windscreen washer fluid. Release the control knob and it will return automatically to its original position.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not use products that can produce coatings on the windscreen (cleaning solutions for crystal plating or coating, glass coatings, etc.). Otherwise, abnormal vibration and noise may occur during the wipe by the wipers.
- › The blades should not come into contact with oily cleaning agents, as they may react chemically and cause deformation.

- › Turn the rear wiper control knob to the OFF position, and the rear wiper will be turned off.

Rear wiper



8D92A393809F

- › Turn the rear wiper control knob to the 🌀 position, and the rear wiper will be turned on.

Front wiper settings

You can make the relevant settings for the front wiper through the Vehicle settings (⚙️) → **【Vehicle】** → **【Wiper】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

【Auto wiper sensitivity】 : you can set the sensitivity of the front wiper when the control knob is turned to the AUTO position. The higher the value, the more sensitive the wiper will be.

A/C system

Vehicle equipment


Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.


A/C control panel



CCD16C004CEA

- › Press ON/OFF to turn on or off the A/C system.
- › Press the A/C button to activate or deactivate the cooling mode. The corresponding indicator light on the button turns on, indicating that the cooling mode is activated. In this mode, the interior temperature and humidity may be reduced.

- › Press the front defroster button  to activate or deactivate the front defroster function. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the front defroster function is activated. In this case, the frosting and fogging of the front windscreen and the side door glass can be gradually eliminated.

- › Press the rear defroster button  to activate or deactivate the rear defroster function. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the rear defroster function is activated. In this case, the frosting of the rear windscreen can be gradually eliminated.


The rear defroster function will automatically deactivate after operating for a period of time, and the corresponding indicator light will go out.

WARNING

Once the rear defroster function is activated, the rear windscreen will become hot. Do not touch it to avoid burns.

CAUTION

When the vehicle is not started, do not use the rear defroster function for a long time, so as to prevent the draining of the battery voltage.

- › Press the internal and external circulation button  to make the A/C system switch between the internal and external circulation modes. The indicator light turns on, indicating that the internal circulation mode is activated.

When the external circulation mode is activated, the exterior air can be introduced into the vehicle.

NOTICE

Normally, the external circulation mode should be used. Using the internal circulation mode tends to cause windows to fog, especially when the compressor is turned off.

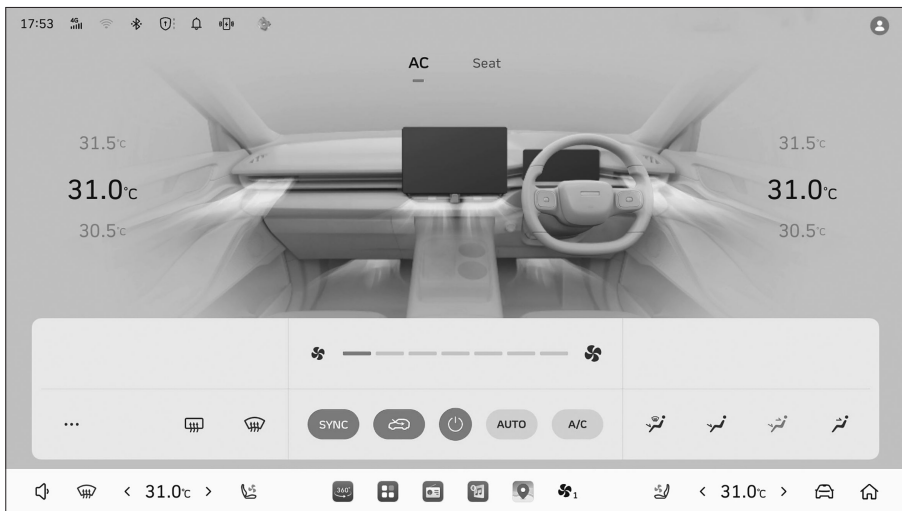
The internal circulation mode should be used under circumstances such as driving through a tunnel, in traffic jams, dirty air outside the vehicle or when quick cooling and heating is desired.

A/C system


A/C interface

i NOTICE

- › The A/C setting interface may vary slightly based on vehicle configurations or multi-media theme styles.
- › The A/C system consumes battery power when it is in operation, and its use will reduce the range.
- › When the traction battery is too low, the power of the A/C system will be limited to extend the vehicle's range, resulting in reduced A/C comfort. The function of the A/C system will return to normal once the traction battery is restored.
- › Under extreme operating conditions (high or low ambient temperatures, prolonged climbing, etc.), the A/C system may temporarily stop working to ensure the vehicle's power performance. The A/C system will return to normal operation afterwards.
- › Using the A/C under charging conditions will affect the charging efficiency. When the charging power is insufficient, the A/C will be restricted or even powered off to ensure the charging efficiency.







178BEFEE43A7

- › Touch the switch button  to turn on or off the A/C system.



- › Touch the **【AUTO】** button to turn on the AUTO mode, and the A/C system will automatically adjust the airflow distribution mode, internal/external circulation mode and airflow to keep the temperature inside the vehicle at the set temperature.

i NOTICE

If the airflow distribution mode and the airflow automatically adjusted by the A/C system cannot meet your demand, you can perform manual adjustment. In this case, the system will exit the automatic mode, and the indicator light will turn off.

- › Touch the **【A/C】** button to activate or deactivate the cooling mode. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the cooling mode is activated. In this mode, the interior temperature and humidity may be reduced.
- › Touch the **【ECO】** button to turn on or off ECO mode. After the ECO mode is turned on, the vehicle will take saving energy consumption as its primary goal, and the A/C performance will be reduced, which is a normal phenomenon.
- › Touch the face-blowing mode button , the feet and face-blowing mode button , the feet-blowing mode button , or the feet-blowing and defroster mode button  to select the corresponding blowing mode.
- › The temperature can be adjusted by touching or sliding the A/C temperature button.
- › Touch the **【SYNC】** button to turn on the temperature synchronisation adjustment mode, and touch the driver temperature adjustment button to adjust the A/C temperatures on the driver side and front passenger side at the same time. Touch the **【SYNC】** button again to turn off the temperature synchronisation adjustment mode. When adjusting the A/C temperature on the driver side, the A/C temperature on the front passenger side is not affected.


When the front passenger A/C temperature is adjusted, the partition control mode automatically activate.

- › Touch the front defroster button  to activate or deactivate the front defroster function. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the front defroster function is activated. The frosting and fogging on the front windscreen and the side door glass can be gradually eliminated. Touch the front defroster button  again to deactivate the front defroster function, and the A/C returns to the state before activating the defrost function.

A/C system

1

Operation

- › Touch the rear defroster button  to activate or deactivate the rear defroster function. The corresponding indicator light goes on, indicating that the rear defroster function is enabled. In this case, the frosting of the rear windscreen and the side mirrors can be gradually eliminated.

WARNING



- › After the rear defroster function is activated, the rear windscreen and side mirror surfaces will rise in temperature. Please do not touch these surfaces to prevent injury.
- › Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for the specific model configuration.



CAUTION



When the vehicle is not started, do not use the rear defroster function for an extended period to prevent drained battery.


NOTICE


The rear defroster function will automatically switch off after a period of time.

- › Touch the air volume reduction button  or air volume increase button  to adjust the air volume gear of the outlet.

Touch or swipe the air volume reduction button  or the area  between the air volume increase buttons to adjust the air volume gear of the outlet.

- › Touch the internal circulation button  or the external circulation button  to switch the A/C system between the internal and external circulation modes.

If the internal circulation indicator light  turns on, it indicates that the internal circulation mode is activated.

If the external circulation indicator light  turns on, it indicates that the external circulation mode is activated. In this case, the air outside the vehicle can be introduced into the vehicle.

NOTICE

Normally, the external circulation mode should be used. Using the internal circulation mode tends to cause windows to fog, especially when the compressor is turned off.

The internal circulation mode should be used under circumstances such as driving through a tunnel, in traffic jams, dirty air outside the vehicle or when quick cooling and heating is desired.

- › Touch the **【A/C MAX】** button to activate or deactivate the maximum cooling mode. The corresponding indicator light turns on, indicating that the maximum cooling mode has been turned on. In this case, the A/C will activate the cooling mode and operate in the lowest temperature, the maximum airflow, the internal circulation mode and the face-blowing mode.

Touch the more A/C settings button **⋮** to show more settings interface.

【Auto defogging】 : you can turn on or off the auto defogging function. When the function is activated and the A/C is in AUTO mode, the system automatically adjusts the A/C to gradually relieve fogging on the front windscreen. When it is set to always on, whether the A/C is turned on or not, the system will make a real-time monitoring and timely removal of fogging on the front windscreen.

【Turn on AC quickly】 : when the A/C interface is called out, the A/C automatically turns on.

【A/C comfort】 : you can set the comfort effect of the A/C system in the AUTO mode.

- › **【Gentle】** : the cooling or heating effect of the A/C system is softer with smaller airflow, compared with the standard mode.
- › **【Normal】** : the A/C system automatically controls the outlet air temperature and airflow according to the temperature set by the user.
- › **【Powerful】** : compared with the normal mode, the power mode provides the A/C system with stronger cooling or heating effect and higher airflow.

A/C system

A/C control

Cooling/heating

After starting the vehicle:

1. Select the **【AUTO】** mode and the corresponding indicator light will turn on. At this moment, the **【A/C】** indicator light will come on, and the compressor will be automatically turned on or off depending on the temperature and the environment.
2. Set the temperature to your desired value. The A/C system will automatically adjust the air distribution mode and the airflow to achieve the set temperature.
3. Selecting the internal circulation mode may speed up cooling or heating and help to improve the economy of the vehicle.

Front defroster/front defogger

After starting the vehicle:

1. Select the front defroster mode, and the corresponding indicator light will turn on.
2. You can also adjust the airflow or the temperature, turn on or off the compressor, or switch between the internal and external circulation modes on demand.

i NOTICE

If the air is dirty or fog is formed inside the car, switch to external circulation mode.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Check the radiator and the A/C condenser on a regular basis. Use a low-pressure water gun or a soft brush to remove the leaves, insects and dust from their front surfaces. Otherwise, these objects will block the air flow, thereby reducing the cooling effect.
- › Running the A/C regularly keeps the compressor and seals well lubricated and prevents leakage. Therefore, even in the cold season when air conditioning is not required, it is necessary to run the air conditioning at least once a week for more than 10 minutes each time.
- › If the A/C system does not cool as well as before, head to the authorised service centre for maintenance.
- › Direct discharge of refrigerant into the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and the refrigerant should be recovered by trained and certified technicians using appropriate containers.

i NOTICE

About the air conditioning odour

› Source of the odour

Internal and external air exchange should be carried out for A/C as its long-term use may gather dirt which will go mouldy after a long time, resulting in odour.

The A/C filter will accumulate water vapour, dust, etc. after use for a long time, resulting in odour.

› Recommended measures

When the outside air is fresh, use the external circulation mode so that the air in the vehicle may maintain the good ventilation.

When the vehicle is in cooling mode, you are recommended to turn off the **【A/C】** switch first and let the blower continue running for about 1 to 2 minutes before turning off the air conditioning system. This will dry off the air conditioning evaporator and the air conditioning system to prevent mould growth and odours.

When you feel the odour is very strong, you are recommended to head to the authorised service centre for check. Clean or replace the air conditioning filter element, if necessary.

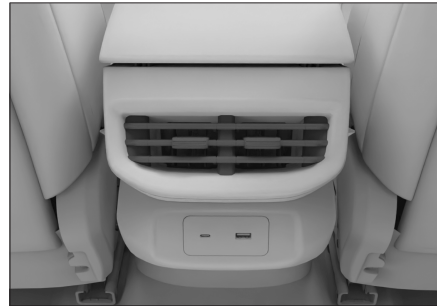
Ⓑ Side defroster vent

Ⓒ Side outlet

Move the air vanes at the centre of outlets to regulate the airflow direction.

Slide the air vane as indicated by the left-to-close marking ☒ ⇐ or right-to-close marking ⇨ ☒ to the limit position to close the outlet.

Rear outlet

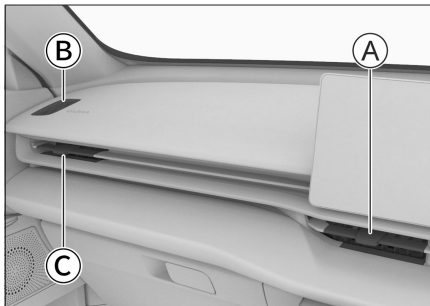


Move the air vanes at the centre of outlets to regulate the airflow direction.

Slide the air vane as indicated by the left-to-close marking ☒ ⇐ or right-to-close marking ⇨ ☒ to the limit position to close the outlet.

Vent

Front outlets




Ⓐ Central outlet

Mobile phone wireless charging

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Mobile phone wireless charging

You can activate or deactivate the wireless charging function for your phone through the Vehicle settings  → **【Vehicle】** → **【Accessories】** → **【Wireless charging】** interface on the multimedia display screen.



After activating the wireless charging function of the mobile phone, make sure that the doors are closed. Set the power supply mode to ON or start the vehicle. Then, the mobile phone placed in the charging area can be charged.

NOTICE

- › To achieve a better charging effect, ensure that the charging coil of the mobile phone is facing downwards.
- › This function is not applicable to all mobile phones, but only to mobile phones that have passed the "Qi" official standard certification and can be normally placed in the charging area.
- › Only one mobile phone can be charged at a time.
- › On bumpy roads, intermittent stopping and resuming of wireless charging may occur. If the mobile phone deviates from the charging area and the charging stops, move the mobile phone back to the chargeable area.
- › It is normal that wireless charging devices and mobile phones will get hot during charging.

When the temperature is too high, the system will stop charging, and will continue charging after the temperature drops.

- › If the mobile phone is faulty, this may also cause it to fail to be charged. Use other mobile phones that meet the requirements for wireless charging detection to confirm whether the mobile phone is faulty.
- › If the mobile phone is equipped with a protective cover or an accessory that does not support wireless charging, take out it first; otherwise, the mobile phone cannot be charged normally.

Mobile phone wireless charging

1

Operation

- › The actual charging power may vary or decrease due to factors such as the mobile phone brand, model, and current battery level. For a mobile phone with a small inductive coil, use the brand-specific wireless charger for high-power charging, as using the on-board wireless charging module may result in reduced power.
- › Due to the position of the charging coil, foldable phones need to align their coils with the vehicle wireless charging coil for proper charging. If not aligned correctly, it may lead to slow charging or no charging at all.
- › To prevent draining the battery voltage, do not use the wireless charging function for a long time when the vehicle is not started.

WARNING

- › For the sake of safety, drivers should not perform charging related operations during driving.
- › Do not place coins, keys, chip cards and other metal objects in the charging area. Otherwise, metal objects may be heated, which could cause abnormal charging or safety accidents.

If metal foreign objects are found in the charging area during charging, do not remove them by hand to avoid scalding your fingers. Deactivate the wireless charging function immediately, and wait a few minutes before removing foreign objects.

- › To use the charging area as a storage case, deactivate the wireless charging function.

CAUTION

- › Do not spray any liquid in the charging area to prevent it from entering the wireless charging system, which could cause system failure.
- › Do not modify the wireless charging system to avoid damage to the vehicle or accidents.

NOTICE

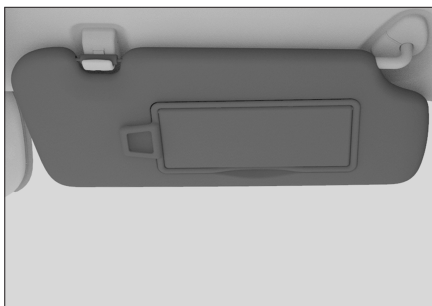
This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Sun visor



38F95C98BEC0

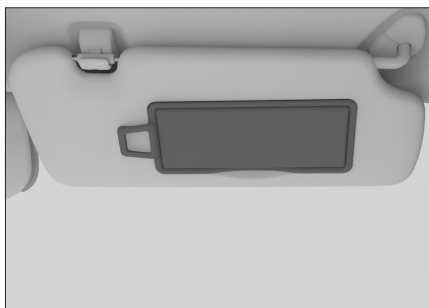
To block sunlight from the front, flip down the sun visor.



EE7A67445D9C

To block sunlight from the side, flip down the sun visor, unhook it and push it to the side.

Vanity mirror



51777FC8915A

Open the cover to use the vanity mirror set inside the sun visor.

Close the cover when not using the vanity mirror.

Storage box



61AFDA63C41A

Pull the handle on the storage box and flip down to open it.

Flip the storage box up until the lock is in place and then close it.

Interior equipment

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the storage box is closed when driving. Otherwise, such items may be dislodged from the storage box and lead to an injury in the case of an accident or emergency braking.

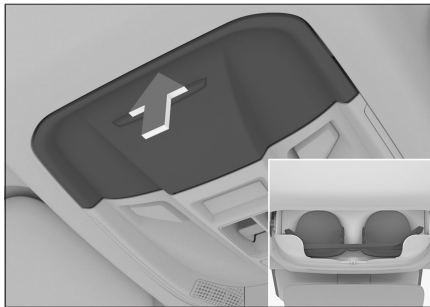
Storage case



51EA465E8B57

Press the storage case switch, the storage case will open at a certain angle, and flip it up to open it.

Spectacle case



7ECF630CECBF

Press the spectacle case to open it.

When glasses are placed, the two glasses temples should be folded normally first, with the lens facing forward and the glasses temples facing up. Otherwise, the glasses may fall off when you open the glasses case.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the glasses box has been closed when driving.

i NOTICE

Certain oversized sunglasses models may not fit into this case.

Front cup holder



5AAB3EAC03CA

There are two cup holders at the front of the auxiliary console.

i NOTICE

When the cup in the cup holder is not easy to take out, do not pull up the cup strongly. Take out the cup to the slot.

⚠ WARNING

› When placing hot drinks, be careful to avoid burns.

1

Operation

Interior equipment

1

Operation

- › Only place beverage cans of suitable size and with lids in the cup holder.

Do not place small or unstable beverage cans in the cup holder, or they may tip over or fall out of the cup holder, thus causing an accident or personal injury.

Ensure that beverage cans are intact and their lids are securely closed. Failure to properly seal containers may result in liquid spills, potentially causing damage to vehicle electronics, staining interiors, or creating safety hazards.

- › If items are not properly stored in the vehicle, they may slip or be thrown up and strike the driver and passengers. Likewise, in case of an accident, items stored in cup holders, mobile holders and open storage spaces may accidentally move and cause personal injury, especially during emergency braking or sudden steering.

Rear cup holder



60232AAA7E9

Tilt the rear seat armrest to the lowest position to use the rear cup holder.

⚠ WARNING

- › When placing hot drinks, be careful to avoid burns.

- › Only place beverage cans of suitable size and with lids in the cup holder.

Do not place small or unstable beverage cans in the cup holder, or they may tip over or fall out of the cup holder, thus causing an accident or personal injury.

Ensure that beverage cans are intact and their lids are securely closed. Otherwise, the liquid may spill, potentially damaging electronic equipment in the vehicle, soiling the interior, or causing personal injury.

- › If items are not properly stored in the vehicle, they may slip or be thrown up and strike the driver and passengers. Likewise, in case of an accident, items stored in cup holders, mobile holders and open storage spaces may accidentally move and cause personal injury, especially during emergency braking or sudden steering.

Bottle holder

There is a bottle holder on the inside of each front door, which is used for placing the sealed bottle container only.

Interior equipment

⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything other than bottles inside the bottle holder. Otherwise, such items may be dislodged from the bottle holder and lead to personal injuries In case of accident or emergency braking.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure that the lid of the bottle is closed to avoid spilling liquid.

Power supply socket

USB power supply socket

Located in the hollowed-out area on the left side of the auxiliary console



9C55B3AAB83E

The power supply can be used when the power supply is in ON mode.

This power supply can be used to charge the devices such as mobile phones and tablets.

Located in the hollowed-out place on

the right side of the auxiliary console



8D250F9C0BFD

Just open the cover to use it when the power supply is set to ON mode.

This power supply can be used to charge the devices such as mobile phones and tablets.

It is under the rear air conditioning outlet.



3DAC0D6076A9

The USB power supply socket is near the rear A/C outlet.

Set the power supply to ON mode to use the rear power supply.

This power supply can be used to charge the devices such as mobile phones and tablets.

Standby power supply

Located in the hollowed-out place on

1

Operation

Interior equipment

1

Operation

the right side of the auxiliary console

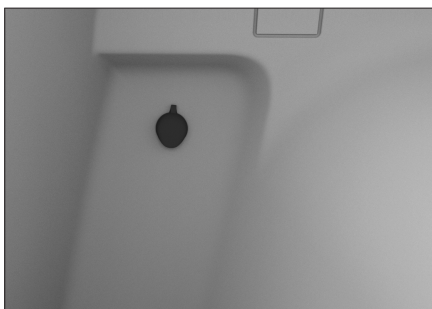


0E60AF45F0BE

Just open the cover to use it when the power supply is set to ON mode.

This power supply can provide a 12 V DC power supply for accessories with rated power less than or equal to 120 W (10 A).

Located on the left trim plate of the luggage area



8CD758994B47

Just open the cover to use it when the power supply is set to ON mode.

This power supply can provide a 12 V DC power supply for accessories with rated power less than or equal to 120 W (10 A).

Driving recorder power supply



73D3F11BEA63

It is located near the interior rearview mirror.

The power supply can be used when the power supply mode is set to ON.

This power supply is designed to provide a 5 V DC power supply for driving recorders whose rated power is less than or equal to 10 W.

WARNING

For driving safety, be careful not to block the line of sight to prevent danger when installing a driving recorder.

WARNING

Flammable gases and heaters must be kept away from the power supply socket.

CAUTION

- › Avoid liquids such as beverages or foreign objects to enter the power supply socket. Otherwise, the faults like short circuits may be caused. If the power supply socket has a cover, close the cover when it is not in use.
 - › If you use an accessory that exceeds the rated power, the vehicle fuse may be burnt out.
 - › Do not connect precision devices, highly sensitive equipment or other important equipment to this power supply socket.
 - › Do not use this power supply in humid and high-temperature environments.
 - › Never use it in parallel or in series with any other power supply.
 - › If you find any abnormal conditions (unusually high temperature, smoke, odour, etc.) during use, please stop using the power supply immediately and contact the authorised service centre for inspection and repair.
 - › Never modify or repair this power supply system without authorization.
 - › The external wiring harness should be waterproof and sealed.
-



2 Driving

Driving procedures.....	90	Intelligent driver assist system	145
Advice on driving in harsh environments	96	Hill descent control system (HDC)	167
Advice on driving during break-in period.....	103	Driving assist system.....	169
Hybrid electric vehicle.....	104	Emission control system.....	173
Power supply mode	110	Head-up display system	175
Starting and shutting down the vehicle	111	Virtual instrument panel	177
Parking brake	113	Instrument indicator lights .	181
Gear shifting.....	116	Power management system	191
Driving modes.....	121		
Steering wheel assist modes	123		
Pedestrian warning sound ..	124		
One-pedal mode.....	125		
Parking assist system.....	126		
Tyre pressure monitoring system	141		
Fatigue driving reminder system	143		

Driving procedures

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Before driving

Removing debris

Remove the snow and fallen leaves, etc. before driving.

Checking vehicle conditions

Check tyres, fluid, lights and body appearance before driving to ensure your safe and pleasant driving.

If your vehicle requires maintenance or repair, get in touch with the authorised service centre in a timely manner.

Confirming vehicle doors and bonnet status

Before driving, confirm all vehicle doors are closed. If a vehicle door has not been closed properly, it may open unexpectedly during the driving and cause an accident.

Before driving, if you have opened the bonnet, confirm that the bonnet has been locked down. If the bonnet has not been locked properly, it may open during driving and cause an accident.

Placing objects in-vehicle

On the instrument panel

Do not place any item on the instrument panel. The items placed on the instrument panel may not only obstruct the driver's view, but also affect the starting off and safe driving, which may lead to accidents.

The driver's feet well

Do not place any items at the feet well of the driver. Items placed at the driver's feet well may be trapped under pedals, causing the driver to lose control of the vehicle, which leads to an accident.

If you want to use a floor mat, choose a suitable floor mat. If the selected floor mat shape and its layout position are inappropriate or if the floor mat is double stacked, pedal performance may be affected, which could lead to problems in starting the vehicle, braking, or difficulties in changing gear, and could result in an accident.

Under the seat

Do not place any items under the seat. Items placed under the seat will make it difficult to adjust the seat position or fasten the seat, which can easily lead to an accident.

Seat backrest

Do not place cushions and other items between the seat backrest and the back of the human body. Otherwise, the correct driving posture will be affected; besides, in the event of a vehicle collision, seat belts and head restraints will not function properly and provide full protection, and even serious life-threatening injuries will occur.

On the window glass

Do not attach decorative items like vacuum suction cups to window glass.

Vacuum suction cups can act as a lens, leading to a higher risk of fires.

Driving

No speeding

The vehicle should not exceed the speed indicated by speed limit signs or mark lines.

No overloading

Overloaded driving is dangerous.

Do not carry passengers or goods more than what is on the indicated maximum limit. Do not carry passengers in the luggage area or the trunk.

No fatigue driving

Fatigue driving is extremely dangerous as the judgement, view and attention of the driver in fatigue state will drop substantially. It can easily cause a serious accident.

No shutting down the vehicle

The brake assist device and power steering system will not function if the vehicle is shut down while driving, which may lead to deterioration of braking efficiency, and cause severe accident.

No turning the steering wheel full-lock for a long time

Turning the steering wheel full-lock for a long time may reduce the power assist effect of the steering system and you may feel heavier when turning the steering wheel.

No applying the brake for a long time

While driving, do not continuously depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake. Otherwise, it may lead to premature wear-and-tear in the brake pad or overheating in the brake, thereby affecting the braking efficiency and possibly leading to accidents.

Brake emitting a warning sound

The disc brake will emit a warning sound when the brake pad wears and needs to be replaced.

If you hear a rattling sound while braking, do not continue driving. Failure to do so will severely wear the brake disk, damage the brake parts and affect the braking efficiency or even lead to an accident.

Driving procedures

2

Driving

Flat tyre

Do not continue to drive the vehicle with a flat tyre. Driving with a flat tyre is extremely dangerous and can easily cause a serious accident. In addition, the tyres, wheels, suspension and vehicle body will be damaged. At this moment, replace the tyre immediately.

When any of the following situations occurs, confirm whether the vehicle tyre is punctured or flat:

- › The steering wheel shakes.
- › The vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- › The vehicle is leaning at an abnormal angle.

If a tyre is flat or punctured during driving, hold the steering wheel firmly and gently depress the brake pedal to slow down. Emergency braking or turning the steering wheel sharply may lead the vehicle to go out of control.

A strong collision on chassis, tyres, and wheels of the vehicle

When the chassis, tyres, wheels, and drive system of the vehicle suffer a strong collision, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe spot and inspect the vehicle. Check for leakage in brake fluid and fuel, and for deformation or damage to the suspension, tyres, wheels, traction battery pack, drive system, etc. If you find signs of leakage or damage, do not continue to drive the vehicle. Failure to adhere to the advice may lead to an accident.

Driving downhill

No vehicle shutdown or neutral coasting

The braking force assist device and power steering system will not work if the vehicle is shut down while driving downhill. In this scenario, braking efficiency will be compromised and you may feel the steering wheel heavy, which is easy to cause an accident.

Driving on uneven road surfaces

When stopping the vehicle on a curb or on a road surface with a height difference, make sure that the tyres are not crushed and deformed by the curb or other obstacles.

When the vehicle must pass a curb, a speed bump or a similar obstacle, you should try to slow down along the vertical angle of the obstacle. Failure to do so may result in damage to the tyre (especially to the side wall of the tyre).

Driving in the following road conditions may cause damage to the bumper. Slow down and drive carefully.

- › Road sections with steps such as parking lot entrances and exits;
- › Steep slopes such as sharp turns in multi-story parking lots;
- › Potholes and rutted roads;
- › Sections of road where there are potholes;
- › Driving from a flat section to a ramp, or from a ramp to a flat section;
- › Parking on a road with speed bumps or along a curb.

Driving on slippery road surfaces, such as wet, snowy or icy road surfaces

Emergency braking, sudden acceleration, or turning steering wheel sharply on slippery road surfaces may cause vehicle tyres to skid and the vehicle to go out of control, thereby causing an accident.

In cold weather, you should slow down when driving in areas that are prone to freezing, such as bridges and shady areas.

Driving on flooded roads

Be careful while driving on flooded roads.

Driving on flooded roads may lead to short circuit of electrical components or damage to electrical elements, resulting in a major accident.

While you drive on flooded roads, the brake pads will become wet, and the braking efficiency will be reduced, which can easily lead to an accident. Gently and repeatedly depress the brake pedal to warm up the brake until you confirm that it returns to normal.

Precautions for passengers

Moving within the vehicle is forbidden

It is forbidden for the passenger to leave his or her seat, or to move around inside the vehicle. Otherwise, during emergency braking, the passenger's body or head, etc., may suffer injurious impact.

Do not extend your hands or head outside the vehicle window

If you stretch your hands or head out of the vehicle, it is prone to hitting against the window frame when braking the vehicle in emergency or closing the window. In this case, it may cause serious injury or even death.

Driving procedures

2

Driving

Do not carry child passengers on your lap

When riding as a passenger, do not carry infant or child passengers on your lap even if you are already wearing a seat belt. Further, do not surround or enclose the infant or child using any part of the seat belt; this may cause grievous injury or even death during collisions or emergency braking.

Child passengers must not be allowed to operate equipment such as vehicle doors, vehicle windows

If child passengers are allowed to operate doors, windows, they are at risk of clipping their hands, heads, necks, etc., in the operation, which will result in a serious personal injury.

If the vehicle door is opened during the driving, children, if not restrained correctly, could fall out of the vehicle, consequently causing serious injuries and even death.

Please use a child safety lock and a window lock switch to prevent children from accidents because of an incorrect operation.

Parking the vehicle

Do not park the vehicle close to flammable materials

Do not park your vehicle near flammable materials such as areas with plenty of grass/hay or scrap paper. Fires may be triggered by contact between the hot exhaust pipe and flammable materials.

If there is wood or plywood in the rear of the vehicle, keep the parking distance. If the distance is too close, it may cause fire.

Do not run the vehicle for a long time in poorly ventilated places

Allowing the engine to idle for extended periods in poorly ventilated areas such as garages can cause exhaust gas build-up, thereby causing severe injury or even death by carbon monoxide poisoning.

Economic driving

Predictable driving

Maintain a proper distance with the front running vehicle and avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. The stable vehicle speed can increase the range.

Avoiding unnecessary weight

Driving with a heavy load and overloading will increase energy consumption. Before driving, remove unnecessary items from the vehicle.

Checking tyre pressure periodically

Too small tyre pressure will increase the rolling resistance, thereby increasing the energy consumption while increasing the tyre wear.

Regular maintenance

Regular maintenance ensures a longer service life and the best economy of your vehicle.

Turning off temporarily unnecessary electrical components

Turn off temporarily unnecessary functions such as the A/C, seat heating and rear window defroster to reduce power use.

Closing windows and sunroof

Opening the windows or the sunroof increases drag, keep them closed when not needed to reduce the energy consumption.

Coasting

The accelerator pedal should be released when approaching the red traffic light or driving downhill, allowing the vehicle to coast by inertia.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driving in foggy weather

Turn on the fog lamps

While driving in fog, you should turn on the fog lamps.

Sound horn to warn pedestrians and vehicles

If you hear the horn of other vehicles, respond immediately by honking your horn to indicate your position.

Drive at low speed and look out for safety

When driving in foggy weather, try to travel at a low speed and keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

Do not wipe fog on the glass during vehicle running

Due to large temperature difference inside and outside the cab, mist may condensates on the inside surface of the windscreen that can affect driver's sight. In this case, you can use the A/C defrosting function or open the vehicle windows a little to have the same air temperature inside and outside the vehicle. This will prevent condensation to form on the inside surface of windscreen.

If you wish to wipe away the condensation on the windscreen glass, please do so only after bringing the vehicle to a stop. Never try to do so while driving the vehicle.

Driving in the rain

Please drive carefully on slippery road surfaces

As poor vision, foggy windscreen and slippery roads are likely to occur when running on rainy days, please drive carefully.

When performing emergency braking, steering and accelerating on a slippery road, tyres may slip, making it difficult to control the vehicle, which may lead to an accident.

While driving in rain, water film can form between the tyre and the ground. At this time the tyre can easily lose its grip, so for safe driving you should slow down.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

WARNING

Try to avoid driving in a heavy rain or a rainstorm.

Fording drive

Precautions for fording drive

- › Before fording drive, confirm the water depth of the road area. If there is more water or the water depth is unknown, drive to take a detour and do not go through a direct course.
- › By analysing road conditions, do not allow the vehicle to enter an unknown region. Such regions may contain hidden obstacles, such as ditches or man-holes.
- › While fording in the water, drive at a low speed and do not park or shift gears.
- › When the vehicle passes an intersection, try to avoid the waves generated by the preceding vehicle to prevent water from entering the front grille.
- › If a fault occurs while fording, causing the vehicle to power off (shut down) and become undrivable, do not attempt to restart the vehicle. Please consult the authorised service centre immediately for treatment.

Inspection and maintenance after fording

Promptly do the following after safely driving through water:

- › Depress the brake pedal lightly several times and check whether all brake functions are working.
- › Test the horn.
- › Test all the vehicle lights.
- › Head to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for routine inspection. During fording drive, water may enter the components and parts of the transmission system and dilute lubricant, which may lead to system malfunctions.

CAUTION

- › Fording drive is only applicable in emergency situations and it cannot be used as a part of routine driving.
- › Fording drive may damage the engine and electrical components.
- › Do not drive through salty waters, beaches or salt water areas as salt may cause vehicle corrosion. If you drive through the above areas, immediately use fresh water to flush all parts that have been in contact with salt water.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

In hot weather

Hot weather and high temperature in summer are bad for the normal vehicle running and the health of driver. To ensure driving safety, the driver shall pay attention to the following items:

To prevent the engine from overheating

The engine is prone to overheating in the hot season due to higher ambient temperature. Therefore, please step up the inspection and maintenance of the engine cooling system, and remove debris embedded in the radiator chips.

Preventing flat tyre

As air pressure in the vehicle tyre rises with temperature increase, flat tyre is likely to occur in case of hot weather and high temperature in hot season. If you experience a flat tyre in the course of the drive, hold the steering wheel securely, step gently on the brake pedal to decelerate, and avoid actions such as emergency braking or sudden steering. Failure to adhere to the advice may cause the vehicle to go out of control.

Preventing sunstroke

Strong sunlight and high temperature in hot season easily lead to sunstroke. Keep the driving room well ventilated and prohibit fatigue driving.

WARNING

Never leave a child in the vehicle unattended.

- › Leaving children alone in the vehicle during hot seasons can easily cause heat stroke, dehydration, personal injury or even death.
- › If the child, left alone in the vehicle, plays with matches, lighters other items, it is easy to cause vehicle fire accidents.

CAUTION

When parking the vehicle, do not leave items such as lighters, spray can, soft drink cans, spectacles, etc., inside the vehicle.

- › As temperatures inside the vehicle can get very high, a leakage of gas from the lighter, spray cans or cracks in these containers can lead to fire.
- › Should a soft drink can burst inside the vehicle, its contents may splash onto electrical components and cause short circuit.
- › As temperatures inside the vehicle can get very high, it is easy to make resin lens or glasses deformation, resulting in crack.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

Driving in cold weather

In cold weather, vehicles may accumulate snow or ice and moving parts such as door handles, windows, side mirrors and wipers may be frozen. To protect your vehicle from freezing and to use it normally, please follow the suggestions below to ensure the best possible driving experience in cold weather.

Preparations before driving

Before the cold weather comes or when driving to cold areas, please make the following preparations:

- › Check that the windscreen washer fluid is suitable for the local temperature to prevent damage to the vehicle caused by frozen washer fluid.
(▷ Page 310)
- › Check the coolant type. Please use the coolant specified for this vehicle to ensure that it has good anti-freeze protection.(▷ Page 310)
- › Check the oil type. Please use the oil specified for this vehicle.(▷ Page 310)
- › The battery performance decreases in cold weather. Please contact the authorised service centre for battery inspection to ensure that there is sufficient power to start the vehicle.
- › According to different driving conditions, you can prepare emergency supplies in advance, such as signal flashers, snow removal shovels, window scrapers, jumper cables, etc.

You can obtain a more comfortable driving experience by the following methods:

- › Start the vehicle in advance and turn on the A/C, seat heating and other functions to make the interior more comfortable.
- › Activate the gun heat preservation. When normal charging is completed, the temperature of the traction battery will remain within the optimal working range, which can improve the range.(▷ Page 43)
- › Pay attention to removing snow and water stains from door handles after parking to prevent them from freezing.
- › In cold weather, the road surface may be covered with snow or ice. To improve vehicle passability and reduce vehicle sideslip, you can contact the authorised service centre to install winter tyres or tyre chains.

i NOTICE

The functions or operations of different vehicle models may vary. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for details.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

2

Driving

Winter tyres

In cold weather when the temperature is low, due to the special characteristics of the normal tyres (tyre width, rubber composition and pattern type, etc.), the elasticity of tyres decreases, further weakening the traction and braking force. At the same time, the tyres noise will be increased. In severe cases, it can even lead to serious cracks, abnormal wear and tear and other permanent damage of normal tyres. It is recommended to use winter tyres when the temperature is lower than 7°C in cold weather. Winter tyres can not only greatly improve the vehicle control stability, but also improve the vehicle braking response and shorten the braking distance.

NOTICE

Although all-weather tyres with M + S markings are better for cold weather, they fail to achieve the performance of winter tyres. Therefore, it is still necessary to use winter tyres for driving on snowy or icy roads.

WARNING

Although winter tyres can improve the vehicle driving performance in winter, do not drive at risk situation, and still keep cautious!

- › Be sure to adjust your speed and driving style based on visibility, weather conditions, road and traffic conditions.

- › Do not exceed the speed limit and load rating indicated on the installed winter tyres when driving.

CAUTION

When the pattern of winter tyres is severely worn, their effectiveness for the cold weather will be significantly reduced. If winter tyres have aged, their effectiveness for the cold weather will be significantly reduced even though the tyre pattern wear is insignificant. Consult the dealer for specific replacement standards of winter tyres.

Instructions for using winter tyres:

- › Comply with the relevant laws and regulations of the country where the winter tyres are used.
- › Install winter tyres on the four wheel at the same time.
- › Use winter tyres having the same size as the normal tyre.
- › Use winter tyres having the same model, size (rolling circumference) and type.
- › Only use winter tyres during the cold season.
- › Be sure to comply with the allowable maximum limits for winter tyres (maximum speed, maximum load, etc.). Otherwise, tyres may be damaged, causing traffic accidents.
- › Do not reverse the rotation direction of the tyres.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

Tyre chains

The use of tyre chains varies according to the current standards in specific countries or regions, and the installation of tyre chains must comply with local regulations.

Install tyre chains on the drive wheels only. Do not install tyre chains on only one tyre. Install tyre chains following the instructions provided by the tyre chain manufacturer and tighten them as tightly as possible.

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions when installing tyre chains:

- › Improper size or installation of tyre chains will damage the vehicle brake pipeline, the suspension, the body and tyres, etc. Choose suitable tyre chains and install them properly.
- › Install tyre chains in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and place the warning triangle behind the vehicle.
- › Always set the power supply mode to OFF and apply the parking brake before installing the tyre chains.
- › Do not install tyre chains on emergency wheels.
- › Do not install tyre chains when the tyre pressure is low.
- › Do not damage the aluminium alloy wheel rim when using tyre chains.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions when driving with tyre chains:

- › After installing tyre chains, the driving speed should not exceed 40 km/h or the maximum speed recommended by the tyre chain manufacturer, whichever is lower.
- › After installing tyre chains, always check that the tyre chains are properly installed after travelling 0.5 to 1.0 kilometres to ensure safety. Retighten or reinstall the tyre chains if they are loose.
- › After tyre chains are installed, the vehicle control may be adversely affected. To minimize the risk of accidents, avoid sudden acceleration, sharp turns, and emergency braking whenever possible.
- › When driving, if you hear the tyre chains knocking on the vehicle body or chassis, stop the vehicle and retighten the tyre chains. If you can still hear the sound, slow down until the sound disappears.
- › Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- › Slow down before entering the curve, so that you can control the vehicle.
- › Remove the tyre chains when driving on road surfaces without snow, or they may affect driving performance and severely damage tyres.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

WARNING

When parking on snowy roads, shut down the vehicle powertrain.

- › If the engine is running at the start of the vehicle with snow accumulated around it, exhaust gas may seep inside the vehicle interior, causing severe injury or even death by carbon monoxide poisoning.

- › When you feel that exhaust gas comes into the vehicle, you can take the following measures:

Drive the vehicle to a ventilated area and lower all the windows.

Set the A/C to the external circulation mode, adjust the airflow to the maximum, and introduce fresh air from the outside into the vehicle.

- › Avoid emergency braking, sudden acceleration, and sharp turns. Otherwise, the tyres may slip sideways, causing you to lose control over the vehicle and resulting in an accident.

WARNING

When the vehicle is temporarily parked on snowy roads, if the engine is running and there is snow all around the vehicle, please turn off the engine or drive the vehicle to a ventilated place. Otherwise, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle, causing serious personal injury or even death from carbon monoxide poisoning.

2

Driving

Driving tips

In cold weather, please drive with due care and attention to the snow and ice on the road.

- › When driving on snowy roads, snow may accumulate on the wheel fenders. Be sure to check and clean it promptly to prevent steering difficulties or a reduced steering angle.
- › If the front and rear windscreens and side mirrors are blocked by snow, clean it in time. At the same time, you can improve driving visibility using the defrosting function.

Advice on driving during break-in period

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyres

Take extra care in the first 500 km when driving with a set of new tyres.

New tyres do not offer optimal grip until they have been break-in.

Brake pad

The new brake pad hardly achieves optimal braking effect within first 400 km vehicle running.

The new brake pad must first undergo a break-in period to achieve optimal friction. If you feel that the braking force of the vehicle is insufficient, you can depress the brake pedal harder to increase the braking force.

During the break-in period, avoid applying extra load on the brake. For example, emergency braking, especially emergency braking at high speed and while running on slope.

CAUTION

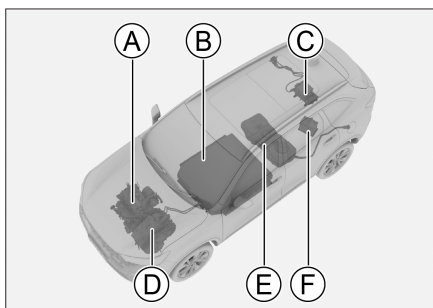
- › The brake pad and the brake disc may wear to different degrees depending on the using condition and the driving method.
- › Due to the vehicle speed, braking force and environmental conditions (such as temperature and humidity), there may be noise when braking, which is normal.

Hybrid electric vehicle

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

About hybrid electric vehicles (PHEV Models)



- (A) Engine
- (B) Traction battery pack
- (C) Charger
- (D) Electronic drive axle
- (E) Fuel tank
- (F) Battery

This vehicle is a Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), which has characteristics that differ from those of ordinary fuel vehicles. Please familiarise yourself with the features of hybrid vehicles and drive carefully.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not touch, remove or replace the parts marked with high voltage warning signs, orange cables and their connectors on the vehicle to prevent high voltage electric shock.
- › After the vehicle is started, the power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning label.

i NOTICE

- › -10 to 40°C is the optimal temperature range for the traction battery. Do not expose the vehicle to high temperatures or extremely low temperatures for more than 24 hours, as this may reduce the performance of the traction battery.
- › If the temperature of the traction battery is too high or too low, the energy regeneration and output power will decrease. In extreme cases, the high voltage circuit may be cut off, causing the traction battery to stop working.

Hybrid electric vehicle

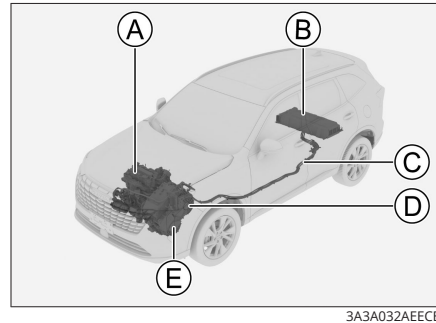
- › The traction battery pack contains batteries and high voltage control circuits. Liquid entering the traction battery pack may cause short circuits, electric leakage, and corrosion of the collection line and battery connection circuit. Therefore, ensure that the traction battery pack is not soaked by any liquids.
- › Due to differences in driving habits (such as frequent acceleration and deceleration), road conditions (such as long slopes), temperature (such as low temperature), and whether electrical equipment (such as A/C) is turned on, the range may fluctuate.
- › The traction battery is affected by its chemical characteristics, resulting in a natural attenuation in battery capacity over time. Therefore, for vehicles that have been used for a while, the battery range will be reduced.

The driving method of hybrid electric vehicles is exactly the same as that of conventional fuel vehicles. The hybrid power system can intelligently use the engine and motor (drive motor) based on driving conditions, thereby improving fuel efficiency and reducing exhaust emissions.

- › The drive motor usually drives the vehicle at a low speed.

- › The engine generally drives the vehicle at a high speed or during more active driving.

About hybrid electric vehicles (HEV Models)



- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| Ⓐ Gasoline engine | Ⓓ Drive motor assembly |
| Ⓑ Traction battery pack | Ⓔ Generator assembly |
| Ⓒ High voltage wiring harness | |

This vehicle is a hybrid electric vehicle, which is different from ordinary fuel vehicles in characteristics. Please be familiar with the characteristics of the hybrid vehicle and drive it carefully.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not touch, remove or replace the parts marked with high voltage warning signs, orange cables and their connectors on the vehicle to prevent high voltage electric shock.

Hybrid electric vehicle

2

Driving

- › After the vehicle is started, the power system will be hot. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature, and always follow the instructions on the vehicle safety warning label.
- › If there is smoke or a burning smell in the luggage area, please immediately step away from the vehicle and contact the authorised service centre. If necessary, please call fire rescue.
- › If there is an unknown liquid near the traction battery in the luggage area and there is a pungent smell, please immediately step away from the vehicle and stand at the upwind position, and contact the authorised service centre for handling in time.

i NOTICE

After starting the vehicle, you may hear a clicking sound or the sound of a fan rotating in the luggage area, which is normal.


The driving method of hybrid electric vehicles is exactly the same as that of conventional fuel vehicles. The hybrid power system can automatically start the operation mode of the engine and drive motor according to the running state and driving mode of the vehicle, thus improving fuel efficiency and reducing exhaust emission.

- › The drive motor usually drives the vehicle at a low speed.

- › The engine generally drives the vehicle at a high speed or during more active driving.

Energy regeneration

The function mainly converts a part of the kinetic energy of the vehicle during braking or coasting into electric energy of the traction battery, thereby extending the range.

You can set the energy regeneration intensity through the Vehicle settings  → **【Drive】** → **【Energy regeneration】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Weak】** : the energy recovered to the traction battery is low, resulting in a gentle deceleration of the vehicle.
- › **【Normal】** : the energy recovered to the traction battery is moderate, resulting in a moderate deceleration of the vehicle.
- › **【Strong】** : the energy recovered to the traction battery is high, resulting in a strong deceleration of the vehicle.

i NOTICE

- › When the vehicle experiences noticeable deceleration due to the activation of the energy regeneration function, the brake light may turn on.
- › When the one-pedal mode is activated, the energy regeneration intensity is not adjustable.

WARNING


The reduction of vehicle speed caused by energy regeneration cannot be a substitute for normal braking. Depress the brake pedal during deceleration and parking.

NOTICE

The energy regeneration will not be carried out when the vehicle is under the following conditions:

- › The vehicle is in the N gear position.
- › The traction battery is fully charged.
- › The temperature of the traction battery is too high or too low.

Electricity reserve

When the power mode is intelligent hybrid, you can set the power reserve function through the Vehicle settings  → **【Common】** → **【Power mode】** → **【Intelligent hybrid】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

The power reserve is divided into intelligent mode and force mode.

Intelligent mode

The system intelligently adjusts the traction battery based on ambient temperature, speed, and other factors. If the traction battery falls below a certain threshold, the engine will intervene to maintain traction battery power balance and optimize fuel efficiency.


Force mode

Users can set their desired battery power. If the traction battery drops below this target, the engine will intervene to actively reserve power, which may increase fuel consumption during charging.

NOTICE

- › In the intelligent mode, if the vehicle runs at a low speed for a long time or runs at a medium-high speed and heavy load, the power reserve is slow, or even the power drops to the basic power balance point.
- › If the travel route has predictable congestion, speed limits and other special conditions, you can switch to the force mode in advance and increase the reserve power setting value for power reserve to meet the subsequent low-speed or urban conditions of battery driving demand.

Workshop mode

You can enable workshop mode through the Vehicle settings  → **【System】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Hybrid electric vehicle

The vehicle diagnosis and maintenance mode is only used for vehicle maintenance. After the diagnosis and maintenance mode is turned on, the high voltage system of the vehicle is powered off, and the vehicle cannot enter the driving state and cannot be charged.

The vehicle diagnosis and maintenance mode exits after the power supply is switched to OFF mode.

2

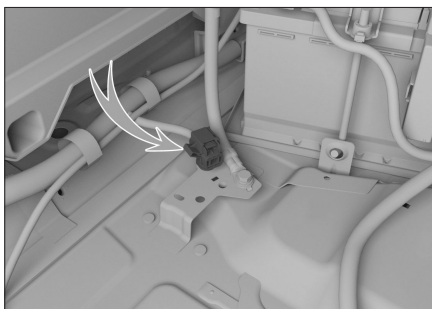
Driving

⚠ WARNING

Do not turn on the vehicle diagnosis and maintenance mode when plugging in the connector for charging.

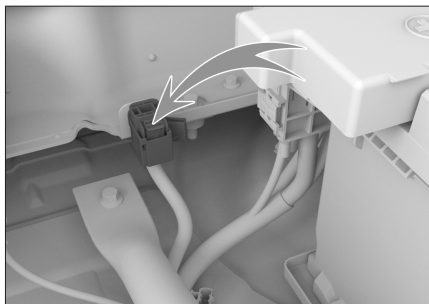
Battery safety switch

PHEV models



290DFA956E9D

HEV models



BD8755231D9A

The battery safety switch under the baggage area is used to disconnect or connect the power supply of the high voltage system, which can be seen after removing the baggage area cover or spacer.

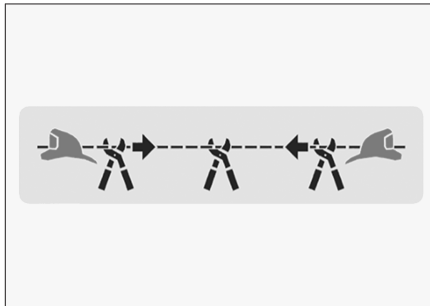
⚠ WARNING

Do not attempt to operate the battery safety switch. You can only use the battery safety switch when servicing the vehicle and performing operations related to high voltage system.

Emergency cut-off point

The emergency cut-off point is a wiring harness labeled emergency cut-off mark, located at the front of the compartment fuse box. In an emergency, to ensure the safety of personnel and the smooth implementation of emergency rescue, the wire harness can be cut.

Emergency cut-off sign



In case of emergency cut-off, it is necessary to cut the wire harness at an interval of 2~3 times within the effective range. Cutting the wire harness only once will easily lead to secondary connection of the wire harness, resulting in serious personal injury.

Power battery recovery

For the replacement and disposal of the power battery, please consult authorised service centre and get the recovery requirements. Discarding the power battery at will may pollute the environment or cause safety accidents.

⚠ WARNING

- › Never sell, transfer or modify the power battery.

If the power battery is used outside the vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, burn, smoke, electrolyte leakage and explosion may occur.

- › Do not dispose of the power battery by yourself. Otherwise, it will pollute the environment and electric shock may occur.
- › To ensure your safety, do not open or modify the power battery pack under any circumstances. If the power battery needs to be repaired, disassembled, replaced and scrapped, it shall be handed over to the authorised service centre for disposal.

Power supply mode

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Push-button type

Mode switching

When carrying a smart key, directly press the power supply switch to switch between the power supply modes.



7F966335C3CA

NO.	Mode	Effect
1	OFF	Electrical components are in the non-working state.
2	ON	All electrical components can be used.

NOTICE

When carrying a smart key, depress the brake pedal with the shift lever in the P position. You can start the vehicle by pressing the power supply switch regardless of the power supply mode.

CAUTION

- › Do not place a smart key on the instrument panel, on the ground, in the storage box, or in the luggage area. Otherwise, the power supply mode cannot be switched.
- › When you leave vehicle, switch the power supply to OFF mode and carry the key with you.

NOTICE

When the power supply mode is ON but not in READY state, and the vehicle is parked, if the battery is detected to be too low, the vehicle will automatically power off.

Starting and shutting down the vehicle

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Vehicle starting

Normal starting

1. Carry a smart key with you.
2. Adjust the seat position and take the correct driving posture.
3. Confirm that the parking brake is applied.
4. Confirm that the P gear position is engaged.
5. Depress the brake pedal.
6. Press the power supply switch to start the vehicle (at this point, the indicator light **READY** on the instrument panel turns on, indicating that the drive system is ready).


i NOTICE

After the vehicle is started, the engine will automatically start or stop according to the vehicle state.

Emergency starting



C195FA6D8EFO

If the prompt of 【Please check the key is in the car】 is shown (such as power loss of the smart key, serious damage to the door guard or the rear bumper and other situations) case, open the front armrest storage case and place a smart key above the sign  in front of the storage to start the vehicle. If the vehicle cannot be started, contact the authorised service centre immediately.

! WARNING

- › Be sure to sit in the driver seat before starting the vehicle. Failure to do so may lead to accident, serious injuries or even death.
- › Do not depress the accelerator pedal under any circumstances when starting the vehicle.
- › Always start the vehicle, even when you need to move it slightly. Otherwise, an accident may occur.

Starting and shutting down the vehicle

NOTICE

Avoid storing the vehicle in very low temperatures, as this may prevent the vehicle from starting.

Shutting down the vehicle

Normal shutting down

1. Stop the vehicle steadily and shift to the P gear position.
2. Press the power supply switch and set the power supply to OFF mode to shut down the vehicle.

Emergency shutdown of the vehicle

In case of emergencies such as inability to stop the vehicle by normal means during driving (at the speed of greater than 5 km/h), you can shut down the vehicle in emergency by performing any of the following operations:

- › Press and hold the power supply switch.
- › Press the power supply switch for 3 consecutive times within 2 seconds.

WARNING

- › Shutting down the vehicle while driving may cause a collision or major personal injury.
- › Do not forcibly shut down the vehicle while driving in non-emergency situations.

When the vehicle is forcibly shut down, the brake and steering wheel power will be lost. As a result, it is more laborious to step on the brake pedal and the steering wheel is heavier. Therefore, decelerate as much as possible before shutting down the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not touch high-temperature components such as the engine, the exhaust pipe, and the radiator immediately after shutting down the engine. Otherwise, you may be burned.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tips for safety

WARNING


- › Parking on a slope steeper than the prescribed limit may cause an accident. Please drive safely and avoid risky parking situations.
- › If the slope is too steep, use of the parking brake system will not be able to stop your vehicle completely. In this case, step on the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Electronic parking brake


Applying the electronic parking brake

When the vehicle is stationary, the electronic parking brake (EPB) can automatically apply using the following two methods:

- › Switch the power supply mode to OFF.
- › Select the P gear position.

If the vehicle cannot automatically apply the parking brake, the driver needs to switch the power mode to ON, and then touch Vehicle settings  → **【Drive】** → **【EPB】** → **【Lock】** on the multimedia display screen to manually apply the parking brake.

NOTICE

The parking brake indicator light (red)  on the instrument panel turns on after the parking brake is applied.

WARNING

- › Parking on a slope steeper than the prescribed limit may cause an accident. Please drive safely and avoid risky parking situations.
- › In case of a very steep slope, use the parking brake system will not be able to stop your vehicle completely. In this case, step on the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Releasing the electronic parking brake

Close the driver door and fasten the driver seat belt, start the vehicle, and shift the gear. The system will automatically release the EPB.

CAUTION


- › When driving downhill, after the system automatically releases the EPB, be ready to depress the brake pedal at any time to avoid the risk of rolling.

Parking brake


2

Driving

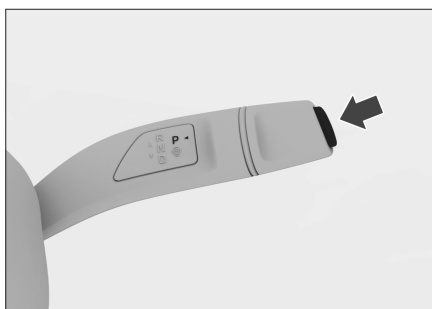
- › When driving uphill, you need to depress accelerator pedal properly to increase the power output to automatically release the EPB for the vehicle to start off.

If the vehicle cannot automatically release the parking brake, the driver needs to switch the power supply mode to ON, depress the brake pedal and hold it, and then touch Vehicle settings  → **【Drive】** → **【EPB】** → **【Release】** to manually release the parking brake.

NOTICE



- › The parking brake cannot be released when the vehicle is in the P gear position.
- › The parking brake indicator light (red)  on the instrument panel turns off after the parking brake is released.

Emergency braking



452269C58A94

In case of emergency, press the P gear button once, and the EPB system will apply braking force. Press and hold the P gear button, and the EPB system will continuously apply braking force.


- › When the vehicle speed is greater than or equal to 3 km/h, the parking brake indicator light (red)  on the instrument panel will be on, accompanied by an audible warning prompt.
- › When the vehicle speed is less than 3 km/h, the parking brake indicator light (red)  on the instrument panel turns on.

WARNING



The emergency braking function can only be used in case of an emergency (e.g. the brake pedal is blocked).

AVH function

When the vehicle is on a slope, stopped at red lights, or in stop-and-go traffic, the Auto Vehicle Hold (AVH) enables the driver to avoid keeping the brake pedal depressed for extended periods or frequently applying the electronic parking brake. It allows the driver to drive more comfortably and reduces the risk of vehicle rolling.

Close the driver door, fasten the driver seat belt, and start the vehicle. Then, you can activate or deactivate the auto vehicle hold function through the Vehicle settings  → **【Drive】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Instructions

1. Activate the AVH function. At this time, the AVH function is in the ready state, and the AVH indicator light  on the instrument panel turns on in grey.
2. After the vehicle comes to a complete stop, applying firm pressure to the brake pedal will automatically engage the parking brake. At this time, the auto vehicle hold function is in operation, and the AVH indicator light  on the instrument panel turns on in green.
3. When the shift lever is in D or R position, depress the accelerator or brake pedal to automatically release the parking brake.

If the accelerator or brake pedal is not depressed for a long time, the AVH function will be deactivated, and the vehicle will automatically switch to electronic parking mode, thus applying the braking force.

In the following circumstances, the AVH will be forcibly deactivated, and the EPB will be automatically applied to the vehicle:

- › The driver seat belt is released.

- › The driver door is opened.
- › Switch the power supply mode to OFF.
- › AVH works for more than 3 minutes.

NOTICE

The auto vehicle hold function may vary depending on model configurations. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Automatic departure function

With the parking brake applied to the vehicle, the parking brake will automatically release when the driver fastens the seat belt, and depresses the accelerator pedal, and the system detects the driver's intention to depart.

On a slope, more traction is required to avoid rolling.

Gear shifting

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction to gear positions

Park (P) gear position

Press the P button to park the vehicle.

Reverse (R) gear position

The R gear position is used for reversing.

Neutral (N) gear position

The N gear position is an unpowered gear, and the transmission system is in a state of not transmitting power when this gear is engaged. It is used when the vehicle is to be started or stopped.

WARNING

- › When stopping the vehicle temporarily in the N gear position, be sure to apply the parking brake or depress the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.

- › Vehicles are prohibited from coasting with the N gear position engaged; otherwise, there is a risk of accidents.

Drive (D) gear position

The D gear position is used for normal driving.

Gear shifting

After starting the vehicle, you can perform normal gear shifting operations. The brake pedal should be depressed all the time before the vehicle starts off; otherwise, the vehicle will automatically move when the shift lever is in the D gear position.

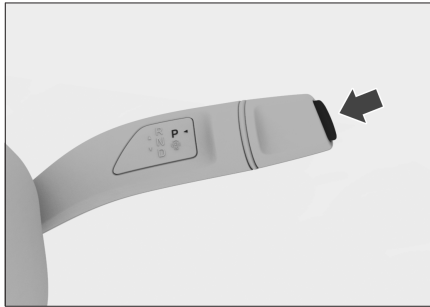
WARNING

To avoid the damage to the vehicle or accidents, the vehicle must be completely stopped before the gear position is shifted.

NOTICE

When the gear shifting is completed, confirm that the correct gear position is engaged.

Shifting to the P gear position



452269CS8A94

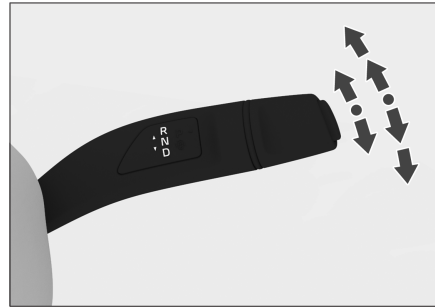
When the vehicle is stationary, press the P gear position button.

i NOTICE

Under the following conditions, the vehicle will automatically switch to the P gear position.

- › The vehicle is stationary and the power supply is set to OFF mode.
- › The vehicle speed is less than 2 km/h, the driver door is opened, and the brake pedal and accelerator pedal have not been depressed.
- › The vehicle is stationary and the charging or discharging cables are connected.

Engaged in the D, R, N gears



5767B8AF2DD0

Move the shift lever up or down by 1 or 2 position(s) to shift between different gears, and it will automatically return to its position after releasing the shift lever. The corresponding gear position will be displayed on the instrument panel.

- › To shift out of the P gear position, depress the brake pedal and then move the shift lever.
- › To shift to the D gear position (or R gear position) from the P gear position (or N gear position), depress the brake pedal and then move the shift lever down (or up) by 2 positions.
- › When shifting from D gear position to N gear position, move the shift lever up by 1 position.
- › When shifting from R position gear to N gear position, move the shift lever down by 1 position.

Gear shifting

WARNING

If a transmission-related error message appears on the instrument panel, the transmission may enter the emergency operation mode. At this point, you can only shift to a specific gear position or simply cannot shift gear positions, and the engine may stall. Stop at a safe place as soon as possible and contact the authorised service centre.

- › To avoid accidental activation of the function, after activating the N gear parking feature, please manually shift the gear and release the EPB; otherwise, the function will not activate properly.

2

Driving

N gear parking

After activating the function, manually shift the transmission to the N position and set the electronic parking brake to the release state before powering off the vehicle. This allows the vehicle to enter sleep mode while not in a parked state.

NOTICE

- › This function is designed for specific scenarios. Please do not activate the N gear parking function on an incline to avoid the risk of the vehicle rolling backward on a slope.
- › To prevent accidental activation of the function, the vehicle will not remember the switch status of the N gear parking function. Each time this function is used, it must be manually activated.

Crawling function

Once the vehicle has started, shift to the D gear position, and release the parking brake and the brake pedal. When the resistance to the vehicle is low, there is no need to depress the accelerator pedal at this point and the vehicle can crawl slowly.

Starting off the vehicle

Normal starting off

1. Close the door, fasten the seat belt and confirm that the parking brake is applied.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Depress the brake pedal and shift to the D gear position.
4. Release the brake pedal and then gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

NOTICE

When the vehicle starts off, the auto departure function will automatically release the parking brake.

Launch control

1. Close the door, fasten the seat belt and confirm that the parking brake is applied.
2. Start the vehicle and make sure that the ESC is off.
3. Depress the brake pedal, shift to the D gear position, and release the parking brake. Also, depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot and the instrument panel prompts that launch control is activated.
4. After the brake pedal is released, the vehicle begins launch control until the vehicle totally starts off.

CAUTION

- › If you depress the brake pedal or release the accelerator pedal during launch control process, the launch control mode will exit.
- › If the vehicle does not start off with continuous braking for a long time (about 5 s) during the launch process, the vehicle will enter timeout status to protect the clutch and braking system. After entering into the timeout status, release the accelerator pedal to exit timeout status for the next launch control mode.

NOTICE

- › With the traction battery in a low charge or at too low or too high temperature, the launch control function may not be available.

WARNING

- › Be sure to drive carefully within the limits permitted by law.
- › The function can be used only when you judge it is safe according to the surrounding traffic conditions.
- › The function cannot be used when the vehicle runs on slippery roads. Otherwise, the vehicle will get out of control, causing an accident.

Stopping the vehicle

1. After releasing the accelerator pedal, depress the brake pedal.
2. After the vehicle is stopped steadily, shift to the P gear position.
3. Shut down the vehicle as needed.

NOTICE

After the vehicle engine is shut down, the vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.

4. Release the brake pedal.

Gear shifting

CAUTION

- › To stop the vehicle temporarily on a slope, depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake. Do not use accelerate pedal or crawling function to keep the vehicle stable, as this can damage the transmission.
 - › To stop the vehicle on a slope, wedge the wheels if necessary to prevent rolling.
-

2


Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driving mode switching

Power mode (PHEV models)


You can set the power mode through the Vehicle settings  → **【Common】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【EV】** : the engine will not start automatically, and the vehicle is completely driven by an electric motor, achieving zero fuel consumption and zero emissions.

NOTICE

When the traction battery is too low, the EV mode may not engage. If the vehicle is already in EV mode and the traction battery becomes too low, it will automatically switch to EV priority mode.

- › **【EV priority】** : when the traction battery is fully charged, the system prioritizes EV drive. The engine will automatically start to provide greater driving force during rapid acceleration. When the traction battery is low, the engine will automatically start to maintain the traction battery.
- › **【HEV】** : in this mode, the control strategy of “Battery priority at a low speed and fuel priority at a high speed” is adopted, allowing the vehicle to achieve lower energy consumption and extended range.


When the power mode is set to HEV and the traction battery power is below 80%, you can activate or deactivate the engine running mode through the Vehicle settings  → **【Drive】** → **【Engine running】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Enabling this mode will start the engine.

NOTICE

Fuel consumption will increase while the engine is running, so it is recommended to use it only when there is an urgent need.

Driving modes

You can set the driving mode through the Vehicle settings  → **【Common】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Driving modes

- › **【NORMAL】** : the power system will automatically choose the best driving mode according to the current driving condition, comprehensive dynamic performance and economy of the vehicle.

It is recommended to select the normal mode for daily driving.

- › **【ECO】** : it meets the primary goal of saving energy consumption, and is suitable for low and medium speed road conditions with weak dynamic response.
- › **【SPORT】** : with strong dynamic response capability, it can meet the driving needs of high-speed and overtaking conditions and bring a higher level of driving experience.
- › **【SNOW】** : it is suitable for driving on low-adhesion roads, ensuring more stable and safe driving of vehicles severe driving conditions.

2


Driving

Steering wheel assist modes

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Switching method

With the vehicle power supply in ON mode, you can switch between electric steering wheel power modes, including light, comfort and sport through the Vehicle settings  → **【Vehicle】** → **【Control】** → **【Steering wheel】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

NOTICE

For switching between power steering modes, the following conditions need to be met:

- › The electric power steering system is functioning correctly.
- › The vehicle speed is less than 200 km/h.
- › No apparent steering operation is carried out.

Light

The driver feels light when operating the steering wheel, which is suitable for driving environments with heavy traffic such as urban areas.

Comfort

The driver feels comfortable when operating the steering wheel, which is suitable for general driving habits.

Sport

The driver feels heavy when operating the steering wheel, so it increases the feedback of the steering wheel. It is recommended to use it at high speed, rain and snow, etc.

Pedestrian warning sound


Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

2

Driving

Pedestrian warning sound

You can set pedestrian warning sound through the Vehicle settings  →

【Sound】 → **【Sound-effect settings】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

After the function is activated, the vehicle speed is not higher than 30 km/h, and the system will sound a prompt to remind pedestrians to pay attention to safety.


WARNING

In crowded scenes such as intersections, schools and shopping malls, it is recommended not to deactivate pedestrian warning sound. Otherwise, pedestrians around the vehicle may cause unnecessary traffic accidents and even casualties because they can't hear the pedestrian warning sound or notice the prompt of the vehicle approaching.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

One-pedal mode

You can turn on or off the one-pedal mode through the Vehicle settings  →

【Drive】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

Instructions

When activating the one-pedal mode and shifting to the D gear position, you can depress, raise, completely release the accelerator pedal for accelerating, sliding, decelerating, and stopping completely. Meeting the normal driving requirements, it is operated flexibly and easily and can be used to improve the range significantly.

The following conditions may cause the one-pedal mode to be deactivated or malfunctioning:

- › The driving mode is in snow mode.
- › The driving mode is switched to snow mode.

- › The accelerator pedal, brake pedal or the whole vehicle is faulty.

WARNING

- › The speed reduction caused by one-pedal mode cannot be a substitute for normal braking completely. In case of emergency, please depress the brake pedal in time.
- › It is not recommended to use the one-pedal mode under snow, ice or slippery road conditions.

CAUTION

When the gradient is too high or the vehicle is in trouble, depress the brake pedal in time to prevent the vehicle from slipping.

The one-pedal mode allows the vehicle to slow down and stop by invoking energy regeneration. A vehicle can stop on most paved roads, but the deceleration effect will be affected by slope gradient and vehicle load. Therefore, drivers should always be prepared for braking.

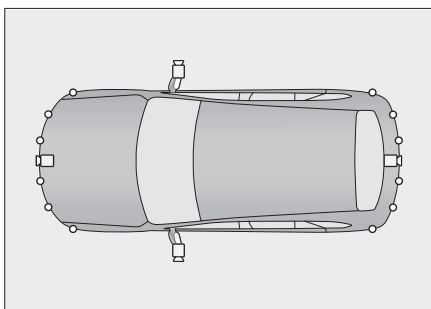
Parking assist system

Vehicle equipment



Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Parking assist system sensor

The parking assist system detects the traffic situations around the vehicle using cameras and radars, and assists the driver in taking appropriate measures based on the detection results to improve the safety and comfort when parking.



F3BF476BBA5F

Illustration	Description	Position
	Camera	On the grille; On the tailgate; On the side mirrors.
	Ultrasonic radars	On the front and rear bumpers

NOTICE

Sensor types and quantities may vary based on vehicle configurations. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

WARNING

- › The parking assist system is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle at any time during parking or similar operations.
- › There are blind spots to the coverage of the parking assist system, and obstacles in certain areas may not be detected. Therefore, during parking or similar operations, please make sure that there are no children or animals near the vehicle.

Parking assist system

⚠ CAUTION

- › When reversing, confirm that the tail-gate is fully closed.
- › Do not knock on the camera and the radar.
- › Do not flush the camera and the radar with a high-pressure water gun in the front. Otherwise, water may result in system failure or fire.
- › Do not use rough or sharp material to clean the camera and the radar. Please wipe with a soft cloth or wash with water (low water pressure) to clean the surface of the camera and the radar.

i NOTICE

When the parking system is working, affected by the characteristics of radar, the following situations may cause the parking system to be less effective in recognizing or not recognizing obstacles, resulting in damage to the vehicle, including but not limited to:

- › There are objects that are in the blind spot of radar detection, such as short objects, objects under bumpers, and objects that are too close or too far from the vehicle.
- › There are hanging objects that cannot be detected, e.g. fire boxes, vehicle spare tyre, rear of trucks.
- › There are ultrasonic noises with the same frequency around, for example, metal noise, high-pressure gas emission noise, or a car horn directed at the sensor.
- › The obstacle is a wire net, fence, thin post, rope, shopping cart, two-wheeled vehicle, or other thin object that cannot reflect effective sound waves.
- › The obstacle is snow, cotton or other substances of which the surface can easily absorb sound waves.
- › The obstacle is an object whose surface does not reflect the detection signal or a person wearing such clothing.
- › The obstacle is a cone-shaped object or an object with an inclined surface.
- › The obstacle is a right-angle object such as a corner of a wall or the rear of a vehicle.
- › The vehicle is parked on grassy or bumpy roads.
- › The license plate is bent or tilting, or a large license plate decorative frame is installed.
- › The radar is damaged, misaligned, or obscured by foreign objects (e.g. paint protective film).
- › To ensure the normal operation of the system, keep the sensor clean and free of snow and ice.

Parking assist system


i NOTICE

Cameras also have certain limitations. The following conditions may affect the normal operation of the parking system, including but not limited to:

- › The left and right side mirrors or the front and rear cameras are damaged, resulting in the cameras not working or misaligned.
- › The camera is dirty or blocked.
- › The ambient brightness is too bright, for example, the camera is exposed to direct sunlight.
- › The ambient brightness is too dark, for example, a basement without lighting or at night.
- › The ambient brightness changes greatly and is inconsistent, for example, mottled tree shadows and reflective floor paint parking spaces.
- › The parking line is not clear or the colour contrast between the parking line and the parking space is not obvious, for example, the floor tile/grass brick parking space.
- › There are unconventional parking spaces, for example, trapezoidal parking spaces with inconsistent front and rear widths or curved parking spaces in parking buildings.
- › There are round or square pillars next to the parking spaces.
- › Obstacles partially intrude into or cling to the parking spaces.

- › The system may not be able to judge and exclude parking spaces with no-parking markings, cones, restricted-stop signs, ground locks, or special parking spaces.
- › The system may not be able to exclude parking spaces with obstacles, for example, bicycles, tricycles, low debris, bricks, etc.

Parking setting

You can set the related functions of the parking assist system through the Vehicle settings  → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Parking assistance】** or **【Imaging assistance】** or **【Collision avoidance assistance】** interface on the multimedia display screen. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for specific setting items.

› **【Surround view deactivation】**

You can set the disable surround view function.

The AVM will turn off automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds the set value.

› **【Activate steering surround view】**

Parking assist system

With the function activated, shift to the D gear position and drive at a low speed and turn on the turn signal light or turn the steering wheel to a certain angle, and the AVM will automatically turn on. After the steering wheel is restored, the AVM will automatically turn off when the turn signal light is off or the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value.

- › **【Maneuver emergency braking】**: after the function is activated, if an obstacle is detected during low-speed driving and a collision risk is determined, the system will automatically apply emergency braking to reduce the risk of a collision.

⚠ CAUTION

- › The maneuver emergency braking function is only an auxiliary one, which cannot guarantee that all obstacles are detected under all conditions.
- › Under complex road conditions (such as off-road conditions or narrow passages), please deactivate the manoeuvre emergency braking function. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.
- › Turn off the maneuver emergency braking function after the vehicle is equipped with a traction hitch or when the vehicle is towing other vehicles. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.

- › **【Activate front obstacle surround view】**: after the function is activated, if the moving speed is below the set speed and an obstacle is detected within the detection range, the AVM system will automatically turn on. The system will automatically turn off if within a few seconds the distance of the obstacle does not change, the obstacle moves away, or the vehicle is shifted into P gear.
- › **【Enable parking interface】**: after the function is activated, every time the vehicle is restarted and when it is first shifted out of P gear, if the system detects that the vehicle meets the conditions for automatic parking out, the parking out interface will automatically activate.

i NOTICE

In cases where the parking lines are unclear or obstructed, the system may not accurately determine the vehicle's position within the parking space, and the function may fail at that time.

Parking assist system

Collision avoidance radar

System description

The collision avoidance radar is a radar detection device. During parking, sensors detect obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle, measure the distance to these obstacles, and give sound prompts to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

Instructions

- › Shift to the R gear position, and the collision avoidance radar will automatically turn on.
- › If the driving speed exceeds the set speed, the collision avoidance radar will automatically turn off.
- › The AVM and the collision avoidance radar are activated and deactivated at the same time.

Detection scope and alarm mode

Sensor position	Detection scope [m]
Front on both sides	0.6
Front centre	1.0
Rear on both sides	0.6
Rear centre	1.5

After the collision avoidance radar is activated, if the sensor detects obstacles within the detection range, it will start to give a warning.

With the shortening of the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle, the frequency of the alarm sound will gradually increase. When the vehicle is about to collide with the obstacle, a long alarm will be given, and the vehicle should not continue running at this time to avoid a collision.

i NOTICE

Due to different vehicle configurations, some models are not equipped with the front radar. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for details.

Around view monitor (AVM) (unequipped with fusion parking)

System description

The AVM uses four cameras to capture images surrounding the vehicle and sends a video signal to the display screen for display. This helps the driver safely and easily drive to avoid accidents.

Instructions





224AEF5AD25D


Parking assist system

- › When the power supply is set to ON mode or the vehicle is started, press the button to turn on or off the AVM.



NOTICE

The AVM cannot be turned off using this button when the gear is in reverse.



- › Press the button  on the left of the steering wheel to activate the AVM.
- › When the power supply is set to ON mode or after starting the vehicle, touch the AVM button  in the all apps interface on the multimedia display screen to activate the AVM.
- › Shift to the R gear position, and the AVM will turn on automatically.
- › Shift to the P gear position, and the AVM will turn off automatically.
- › The AVM will turn off automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds the set value.

You can set the exit speed for the AVM through the Vehicle settings  → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Parking assistance】** interface on the multimedia display screen.


Interface introduction

- › Touch the settings button  to open the parking settings interface.
- › When the top view interface is displayed, touch the parking sound button  to activate or deactivate the radar alarm tone.

Each time the AVM is activated, the radar alarm tone is enabled by default.

- › When the top view interface is displayed, touch the 3D button to switch the view mode between 2D and 3D.
In 2D view mode, touch the surrounding area of the vehicle in the top view to access the perspective buttons, and touch the perspective buttons to switch to the corresponding view image.
In 3D view mode, touch the surrounding area of the vehicle in the top view to display the perspective slider, and slide the perspective buttons on the slider to freely switch the perspective images.
- › In 2D view mode, touch the front wheel perspective button  to access the front wheel perspective image.
- › In 2D view mode, touch the rear wheel perspective button  to access the rear wheel perspective image.

Parking setting

In the AVM interface, touch the settings button  to open the parking settings interface.

- › **【Transparent chassis】** : after the transparent chassis function is activated, as the vehicle moves, the AVM interface gradually displays the images of the road conditions below the vehicle.

Parking assist system

2

Driving

- › **【Activate steering surround view】** : after this function is activated, when driving in D gear at a low speed, turn on the turn signal light or rotate the steering wheel to a certain angle to pop up the AVM window. You can drag the window to the left or right of the display as needed. After the steering wheel is restored, the AVM will automatically turn off when the turn signal light is off or the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value.
- › **【Maneuver emergency braking】** : you can activate or deactivate the maneuver emergency braking function. After the function is activated, if an obstacle is detected during low-speed driving and a collision risk is determined, the system will automatically apply emergency braking to reduce the risk of a collision. At this time, the maneuver emergency braking function indicator light (A) will turn on and display in red on the imaging interface.
- › Turn off the maneuver emergency braking function after the vehicle is equipped with a traction hitch or when the vehicle is towing other vehicles. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.
- › **【surround view deactivation】** : the AVM will automatically turn off when the vehicle speed exceeds the set value.

Around view monitor (AVM) (equipped with fusion parking)

System description

The AVM uses four cameras to capture images surrounding the vehicle and sends a video signal to the display screen for display. This helps the driver safely and easily drive to avoid accidents.

Instructions




224AEF5AD25D


⚠ CAUTION


- › The maneuver emergency braking function is only an auxiliary one, which cannot guarantee that all obstacles are detected under all conditions.
- › Under complex road conditions (such as off-road conditions or narrow passages), please deactivate the manoeuvre emergency braking function. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.
- › When the power supply is set to ON mode or the vehicle is started, press the button to turn on or off the AVM.

i NOTICE


The AVM cannot be turned off using this button when the gear is in reverse.

- › When the power supply is set to ON mode or after starting the vehicle, touch the AVM button  in the all apps interface on the multimedia display screen to activate or deactivate the AVM.
- › Shift to the R gear position, and the AVM will turn on automatically.
- › Shift to the P gear position, and the AVM will turn off automatically.
- › The AVM will turn off automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds the set value.




You can set the exit speed for the AVM through the Vehicle settings  → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Parking assistance】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › When the button  on the left side of the steering wheel is set to AVM, press the button to activate the AVM.

i NOTICE

Press and hold the button  on the left side of the steering wheel to enter the function setting interface, where you can set the customized function for this button.

Interface introduction

- › Touch the **【Intelligent parking】** button to activate the intelligent parking function.
- › Touch the **【Reverse tracking】** button to activate the reverse tracking function.
- › Touch the settings button  to open the parking settings interface.
- › Touch the 360 button  to switch between the large single view and the small surround view + small single view display.
- › When the top view interface is displayed, touch the parking sound button  to activate or deactivate the radar alarm tone.

Each time the AVM is activated, the radar alarm tone is enabled by default.

- › When the top view interface is displayed, touch the 2D/3D button to switch the view mode between 3D and 2D.



In 2D view mode, touch the surround-view area of the vehicle in the top view to access the perspective buttons, and touch the perspective buttons to switch to the corresponding view image.

Parking assist system


2

Driving


In 3D view mode, touch the surrounding area of the vehicle in the top view to display the perspective slider, and slide the perspective buttons on the slider to freely switch the perspective images.

- › In 2D view mode, touch the front wheel perspective button  to access the front wheel perspective image.
- › In 2D view mode, touch the rear wheel perspective button  to access the rear wheel perspective image.

Parking setting

In the AVM interface, touch the settings button  to open the parking settings interface.

- › **【Transparent chassis】** : after the function is activated, the road surface beneath the vehicle is initially displayed in grey, and once the driving distance exceeds the vehicle length, the real-time road surface image beneath the vehicle is displayed.
- › **【Activate front obstacle surround view】** : after the function is activated, if the moving speed is below the set speed and an obstacle is detected within the detection range, the AVM system will automatically turn on. The system will automatically turn off if within a few seconds the distance of the obstacle does not change, or the obstacle is far away, or the parking brake is applied.

- › **【Maneuver emergency braking】** : you can activate or deactivate the maneuver emergency braking function. After the function is activated, if an obstacle is detected during low-speed driving and a collision risk is determined, the system will automatically apply emergency braking to reduce the risk of a collision. At this time, the maneuver emergency braking function indicator light  will turn on and display in red on the imaging interface.

⚠ CAUTION

- › The maneuver emergency braking function is only an auxiliary one, which cannot guarantee that all obstacles are detected under all conditions.
- › Under complex road conditions (such as off-road conditions or narrow passages), please deactivate the manoeuvre emergency braking function. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.
- › Turn off the maneuver emergency braking function after the vehicle is equipped with a traction hitch or when the vehicle is towing other vehicles. Otherwise, the system may apply unnecessary braking.

- › **【Activate steering surround view】** : after the function is activated, when the gear is in D and the vehicle speed is below 30 km/h, turning on the turn signal light or turning the steering wheel to a certain angle will automatically activate the AVM. The AVM will automatically turn off if the steering wheel angle is below a certain value, the turn signal light is turned off, or the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value.
- › **【surround view deactivation】** : the AVM will automatically turn off when the vehicle speed exceeds the set value.

Intelligent fusion parking system

System description

Based on the AVM and the collision avoidance radar system, the intelligent fusion parking system uses radar sensors and cameras to detect vehicle surrounding obstacles, parking lines and other information to identify suitable parking slots and automatically control the vehicle to complete steering, shifting, and braking operations. The driver only needs to drive the vehicle into and out of the parking space by following the system prompts.

During the parking, if moving obstacles such as pedestrians or vehicles are detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will automatically perform emergency braking to quickly complete vehicle braking. If a fixed obstacle is detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will perform comfortable braking to achieve smooth braking of the vehicle.

WARNING

- › Intelligent fusion parking is only an assisted driving function and cannot cope with all traffic, weather, road and light conditions.
- › You need to judge by yourself whether the current environment meets the parking conditions, and you cannot completely rely on the intelligent fusion parking system.
- › When using intelligent fusion parking, always observe the surrounding environment and pay attention to the system prompt information, hold the steering wheel all the way, and make takeover measures if necessary.
- › You, as the driver, assume ultimate responsibility for vehicle control and are subject to current traffic laws and regulations.

Parking assist system

2

Driving

Parking in

1. When the vehicle enters the parking lot, in the AVM interface, touch the **【Intelligent parking】** button to search for a parking space according to the system prompts.
2. Depress on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, select an appropriate parking space, touch the button **【Start parking】**, and upon hearing the system's prompt to release the brake, activate the parking-in feature.

i NOTICE

- › In the process of searching for a parking space, please make sure to leave a proper distance (about 0.5 to 1.5 meters) from the target parking space. Otherwise, the system may not be able to identify the parking space.
- › After touching the **【Start parking】** button, confirm the system's audible prompt before releasing the brake pedal. Failure to do so may result in unintended vehicle rolling.

Parking out

1. Depress the brake pedal and start the vehicle. In this case, the indicator light (green) **READY** on the instrument panel turns on.

2. When the vehicle is in the parking space and stationary, touch the **【Intelligent parking】** button in the AVM interface to enter the intelligent fusion parking system.
3. Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, select an appropriate parking-out direction, touch the button **【Start parking】**, and upon hearing the system's prompt to release the brake, release the brake pedal again, and the vehicle will automatically move out of the parking space.

i NOTICE

- › When the parking space line is unclear or blocked, the system may not be able to accurately identify the vehicle in the parking space, and this function may fail at this time.
- › After touching the **【Start parking】** button, confirm the system's audible prompt before releasing the brake pedal. Failure to do so may result in unintended vehicle rolling.

Precautions

During parking, the following situations will cause the parking system to be temporarily interrupted, and parking can be continued after the interrupted operation disappears:

- › Open the doors (including the tailgate and the bonnet).
- › Fold the side mirrors.

Parking assist system

- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › Obstacles appear on the parking track.
- › Interfere with the accelerator pedal.

During parking, the following conditions may cause the parking system to exit:

- › The vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h while searching for a parking space.
- › Interfere with the gear position, steering wheel or parking brake.
- › There is recoverable interruption time-out, Parking maneuver attempt limit, and total parking time timeout.
- › There is no path for the vehicle to travel when parked out.
- › The ground slope where the vehicle is parked is too steep.
- › Drive in snow, mud or sand.

The system cannot cover all parking scenario applications, and the expected functions may not be achieved in some special situations. The following situations are just examples and do not include all special situations:

- › Due to environmental factors, clear parking space lines may become unidentifiable. This can occur when the lines are obscured by pollution, debris such as garbage, overgrown weeds, or soil accumulation. Additionally, low visibility conditions, including inadequate lighting, strong reflections from the parking surface, or water accumulation covering the lines, can further impede their detection.

- › There are bumps on the surface of the parking space, and the opposite parking line cannot be detected.
- › There are pits on the ground of the parking line.
- › The front or rear vehicle is too close to the unoccupied parking space, or occupies part of the parking space.
- › The side of the vehicle is parked on the curb.
- › There are pedestrians or other obstructions in the parking space.
- › Pedestrians and other obstacles stay near the camera when the vehicle is stationary.
- › There are abandoned parking space lines within the parking space.
- › The parking space is in a corner or on a bend.
- › Vehicle tyres are severely worn, or unapproved tyres (including non-full-size spare tyres) are fitted.
- › Obstacles close to the parking space

Parking assist system

2

Driving

When obstacles are present in close proximity to the parking space, sensor limitations may lead to inaccuracies in distance estimation. In such cases, users are advised to maintain heightened vigilance and promptly assume manual control of the vehicle upon detecting any potential risk of collision or scraping. For example: cement square columns close to the parking space, cement square columns partially intruding into the parking space.

› Hanging obstacles

When encountering suspended obstacles, the detection capability may be significantly compromised due to inherent sensor limitations. These obstacles may either remain undetected or yield suboptimal detection results, thereby posing a substantial risk of vehicle damage through scraping or collision. It is strongly recommended to avoid selecting parking spaces with such potential hazards. For example: undetectable fire boxes (fire boxes hanging on square columns), undetectable outside spare tyres of a vehicle, undetectable rear of a truck.

› Special shaped obstacles

When encountering obstacles with irregular geometries, the sensor system may receive insufficient or ambiguous return signals, potentially leading to either failure of recognition or delayed detection. This condition poses a significant risk of collision and surface damage. Drivers are advised to maintain constant vigilance and remain prepared to immediately assume manual control of the vehicle when necessary. Examples: right angle cement columns, trailer hitches, sharp corner obstacles, shaped obstacles (shopping carts, etc.).

› Using this function on uneven grounds (such as weeds, gravel roads, etc.) may cause system recognition errors and unnecessary braking.

› External sound sources may cause interference to the system, causing the sensor failure to identify correctly, and may falsely report obstacles that do not exist.

› The sensor is dirty or obscured.

› There is heavy fog or severe weather such as rain and snow.

› Under some step scenes, the vehicle needs to be taken over in time during parking.

Cases in which the intelligent fusion parking is disabled:

› Snow chains or spare tyres are installed.

› Items loaded exceed the vehicle size.

- › Install the tow hook.
- › The ground slope where the vehicle is parked is too steep.
- › The road surface has large pits or cavities.

Reverse tracking

System description

When the vehicle is running in the D gear position at a speed lower than or equal to 30 km/h, the system will record the last 50 m route in real time. When the reverse tracking function is activated, the system will control the steering wheel, the brake and the vehicle speed so that the vehicle can automatically complete reversing in accordance with the recorded route.

During reversing, if pedestrians, vehicles, or other non-fixed obstacles are detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will automatically execute emergency braking to quickly stop the vehicle.

NOTICE

Due to mechanical deviation, tyre pressure, and other factors affecting system control accuracy, there will be some deviation in the reversing path. Therefore, a complete return along the original path cannot be guaranteed.

WARNING

The track-back reverse function is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. During the reversing process, the driver should observe the surrounding situation and reversing prompt information in real time. Emergency control or other necessary measures are required in case of special circumstances to ensure safety.

Instructions

1. Touch the **【Reverse tracking】** button on the AVM (Around View Monitor) interface to activate the reverse tracking function.

Automatic reversing is completed by following the prompts displayed on the multimedia display screen when the reverse tracking function is activated.

CAUTION

For parking safety, the driver needs to monitor the surroundings of the vehicle at any time, to brake and take over the vehicle in time when there is a collision risk.

Precautions

When the following situations occur, the system will stop and the recorded route will be cleared:

- › The vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.

Parking assist system

- › The engine stalls abnormally.
- › The steering wheel angle is too large (about 450°).
- › The automatic reverse deviates from the recorded route by about 1 m.

During reverse, the following conditions will cause the reversing assist function to be interrupted or exited:

- › Touch the reverse tracking button.
- › Interfere with the gear position, the steering wheel, the parking brake, or the accelerator.
- › Release the driver seat belt.
- › Open the vehicle doors (including the tailgate).
- › Fold the side mirrors.
- › The system detects that the vehicle cannot continue driving.
- › Obstacles are detected on the driving track.

NOTICE

After interruption and exiting due to non-system breakdown, activate the reverse tracking function again, and the system can control the vehicle to complete reversing along the remaining path.

2

Driving

Tyre pressure monitoring system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

System description

The tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tyre pressure and temperature in real time and alerts the driver to take appropriate actions to avoid an accident when an abnormality occurs in the tyre.

CAUTION

- › Using a replacement tyre that is not a genuine spare may interfere with the proper functioning of the TPMS.
- › The TPMS may not work properly when the tyre chain is installed or the wheel is covered.
- › The TPMS may not work properly due to radio interference.

- › After replacement of tyres or tyre rotation, stop for more than 16 minutes, and then start the vehicle and drive at a speed higher than 30 km/h for about 9 minutes, and then the TPMS will automatically learn and locate. If the tyre pressure is not displayed or displayed incorrectly after 9 minutes, please contact the authorised service centre to reset TPMS as soon as possible.

NOTICE

- › The TPMS cannot be a substitute for regular tyre maintenance. Check the tyre frequently to ensure proper tyre pressure, even if no warning is received from the TPMS.
- › Tyre pressure can be affected by factors such as the heat generated from vehicle operations, external environment, and journey time. Typically, a fluctuation of around 30 kPa in tyre pressure is normal.
- › The TPMS is unable to monitor the spare tyre pressure.

Self-learning function

Data update can automatically complete through the self-learning function after tyre replacement or tyre rotation.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

After stopping the vehicle for more than 16 minutes, the system will automatically complete tyre pressure learning and positioning by starting the vehicle and driving at a speed higher than 30 km/h for about 9 minutes.

If self-learning fails, please contact the authorised service centre as soon as possible and reset the TPMS.

› On the instrument cluster, the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light (⚠) turns on.

If there is a warning about tyres during driving, avoid sharp steering or harsh braking. Reduce your speed, drive to a safe location and park your vehicle as soon as possible. Then contact the authorised service centre for maintenance.

2

Driving

Monitoring function

Press and hold the scroll button on the right side of the steering wheel to enter the custom information edit interface of the instrument panel, and then scroll the button on the right side of the steering wheel up or down until the custom information interface of the instrument panel displays tyre pressure monitoring information, and you can view the pressure and temperature information of four in-use tyres in real time.

When the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, the abnormal tyre icon on the tyre pressure monitoring interface shows yellow and flashes.

Warning function

When the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, the instrument cluster will provide following warning:

› The warning interface will be displayed on information centre. The abnormal tyre icon becomes yellow and an audible alert is given.

Fatigue driving reminder system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction of fatigue driving reminder


The fatigue driving reminder system identifies the driver's fatigue level by continuously detecting the driver's operation of the vehicle. If the system recognizes that driver is fatigue, sound and visual alarms will be given to alert the driver to drive with care.

WARNING

- › Fatigue driving is strictly prohibited. Reasonable parking intervals should always be arranged for long-distance driving to ensure adequate rest.
- › It is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that he/she is in a good driving condition.

- › Fatigue driving warning function is only an auxiliary tool and may not be able to actually monitor driver fatigue. In some cases, the system may judge normal driving behavior as fatigue.

Instructions

You can activate or deactivate the fatigued driving reminder function through the Vehicle settings  →

【Drive】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

Fatigue warning

When the system detects the following conditions, the instrument panel will display the 【Please take a break】 warning screen, accompanied by an audible alarm.

- › The system detects that the driver is in a fatigue driving condition and the actual vehicle speed exceeds 65 km/h.
- › The vehicle has been driven for 4 consecutive hours.

WARNING

- › While the vehicle speed remains less than 65 km/h, the system will not activate the warning even if the driver shows signs of fatigue.

Fatigue driving reminder system

2

Driving

- › In some situations, the driver's abilities may remain unaffected even when fatigued. In such circumstances, the system will not issue a warning to the driver. For this reason, when the driver shows signs of fatigue, stop the vehicle and rest timely, regardless of whether the driver monitor system has issued a warning.
 - › This feature cannot be used to loosen driving restrictions. Regular stops must be arranged during the long driving for adequate rest.
-

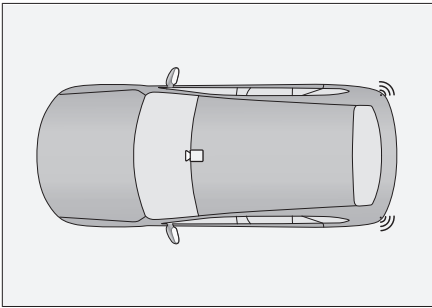
Intelligent driver assist system

Vehicle equipment



Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Intelligent driving assist system sensor

The intelligent driving assist system detects the traffic situations around the vehicle using a camera and radars, and assists the driver in taking appropriate measures based on the detection results to improve safety and comfort while the vehicle is travelling.



5F87552869EB

Illustration	Description	Position
	Camera	Near the base of the inside rear-view mirror
	Millimetre wave radar	Inside the rear bumper

NOTICE

Due to different vehicle configurations, sensor types and quantities may vary. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

WARNING

- › The intelligent driving assist system is intended as a supplementary system and is not designed to replace the driver's own assessment of the traffic conditions or to take control of the vehicle. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- › When the vehicle has towing equipment installed or is towing another vehicle, intelligent driving assist system can not work properly, so the function related to the intelligent driving should be turned off.

Intelligent driver assist system

About the camera

The camera is used to identify lane markings, traffic signs, targets in front of the vehicle, etc., providing relevant information for the intelligent driving assist function.

WARNING

- › It is strictly prohibited to disassemble or modify the camera without permission.
- › When the camera does not work properly, the function of relying on the camera to provide lane marking, traffic sign and target information will be limited.
- › The camera has a limited detection scope and cannot detect the targets outside the limit scope.
- › When the camera fails or is damaged, please contact the authorised service centre in time for repair or replacement.

WARNING

Many factors will affect the performance of the camera, resulting in detection performance degradation, detection delay, and detection errors. These factors include but are not limited to the followings:

- › Poor lighting conditions at night;
- › Weather conditions (such as rain, snow and fog) with poor visibility;

- › A situation in which a vehicle wobbles due to an undulating or uneven road;
- › A situation where the ambient light changes sharply;
- › A situation that a strong light shines the camera;
- › Deformed or damaged windscreen, causing the incorrect camera installation position and angle;
- › Complex intersections;
- › Too high or too low ambient temperature;
- › A situation that the camera is covered with a foreign object;
- › Short following distance and blocked camera;
- › A situation where a guardrail, an elevated road or a tree casts a shadow on a road;
- › Poor tunnel light;
- › A situation of passing through narrow bends and sharp turns;
- › Unclear lane markings.

NOTICE

When the instrument indicates that the system sensor detection is restricted, check and ensure the camera and its surroundings are clean and free of obstructions so that the system can operate properly.

Intelligent driver assist system

About the millimetre wave radar

The radar is used to detect the targets at the rear sides of the vehicle, providing relevant information for the intelligent driving assist function.

WARNING

- › It is strictly prohibited to paint and modify the bumper without permission to avoid the limited detection performance of the radar.
- › When the radar cannot work normally, the function relying on the radar to provide detection information will be limited.
- › The radar has a limited detection scope and cannot detect the targets outside the limit scope.
- › When the radar fails or is damaged, please contact the authorised service centre in time for repair or replacement.

WARNING

Many factors will affect the performance of the radar, resulting in detection performance degradation, detection delay, and detection errors. These factors include but are not limited to the followings:

- › Severe weather (e.g. fog, haze, rain, snow and dust storm);
- › Foreign objects such as ice, snow, water, and dust attached to the surface of the radar, or bumper;

- › Misaligned or blocked radar;
- › The impact to the area around the radar and the bumper due to the collision of vehicles, scratches and other accidents;
- › Too small volume of the detected object;
- › Interference by electromagnetic wave of the same frequency;
- › The radar temperature is out of the working range due to the vehicle being in a high temperature or extremely cold environment.

NOTICE

The area around the radar and the bumper must be kept clean and free from foreign objects such as ice, snow and dust to ensure the normal operation of the radar.


When you find a foreign object attached to the surface of the radar, wipe it with a soft cloth or clean it with water.

- › Do not use the high-pressure water gun to flush the radar.
- › Do not use sharp or abrasive objects for cleaning.
- › Do not use chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners.

Intelligent driver assist system

Forward assist system

The forward assist system identifies vehicles on the lane via a camera on the front windscreen. When the risk of collision ahead is detected, the system will issue an alarm or conduct the braking intervention to mitigate the consequences of the accident.

You can select and set the corresponding function through the Vehicle settings  → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Safety assistance】** → **【Collision avoidance assistance】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

WARNING

- › This system may not function as expected in all situations. Driving the vehicle towards pedestrians, animals or other vehicles for the purpose of testing the system is strictly prohibited. Failure to comply may result in serious injuries or death.
- › In complex driving conditions, the system may apply unnecessary braking. This may happen, for example, in construction sites, at railway tracks, and when water is sprayed or splashed in front of the vehicle.
- › This system may not work or may not work properly in low-visibility situations (such as rain, snow or fog, and at night).

Auto emergency braking

- › The auto emergency braking system can detect pedestrians, cyclists, most of stationary vehicles, or vehicles travelling in the same direction as your vehicle (e.g. passenger cars, trucks, buses, etc.).
- › When the vehicle speed is lower than 20 km/h, and the vehicle turns at a junction, if an oncoming vehicle or a pedestrian from the opposite direction is detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will apply the brake.
- › The system can detect pedestrians and vehicles from the opposite direction of your vehicle (such as passenger cars, trucks, buses and so on). When the light is dark, the detection range will be affected, so please turn on the headlights when driving at night.

NOTICE

To ensure driving safety, every time the power supply is switched to ON mode, the auto emergency braking function is activated by default.

When the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h and the system detects that there is collision risk for pedestrians or vehicles, it will give a warning to prompt the driver to drive safely.

Intelligent driver assist system

For models in certain countries/regions, the system will remind the driver to drive safely when it detects a pedestrian or a vehicle with a risk of collision at speeds greater than 5 km/hr.

There are 2 warning levels: sound warning (pre-warning), short brake warning (emergency warning).

In case of emergency, if the driver does not apply the brake, the system will control the vehicle to automatically perform emergency braking (limited braking), and the left and right signal lights will flash quickly to remind the rear vehicle, so as to reduce the collision risk.

i NOTICE

- › At low vehicle speeds, this function may slow the vehicle to a standstill, but will not keep the vehicle stationary. At this point, the driver should apply the brake actively.
- › If the driver steps on the accelerator pedal or turn the steering wheel during the emergency braking, the system will disengage the emergency braking.
- › If the vehicle speed exceeds 65 km/h and the system determines that the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is too close, the instrument panel will display the prompt message of "Maintain a safe distance".
- › When the cruise control assist system is working, the safe distance alert function is hidden.

- › When the light is dark, the detection range will be affected, so please turn on the headlights when driving at night.

Detecting targets

For valid targets identified by the system, the system may not always achieve the same level of performance, depending on vehicles, pedestrians, scenes, and road conditions.

- › The cyclist must be an adult, and the bicycle must be designed for an adult. The system can only work best when it detects clear information about the human body and the contour of the bicycle, which means that the system needs to clearly identify contour information such as the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, thighs, etc. of the rider and the normal cycling of the rider.
- › The system detects pedestrians in contrast to the background (e.g., the colour of the pedestrian clothing is contrasting with the colour of the surrounding environment). If the contrast is low, the pedestrian will be detected later or not at all, indicating that warnings and braking will be delayed or unavailable.

Intelligent driver assist system

The system can only work best when it detects clear information about the shape of the human body, which means that the system needs to clearly identify information about the head, arms, shoulders, thighs, etc. of the rider and the normal walking pattern of the rider.

2


Driving

Front collision warning sensitivity

Sensitivity is divided into three levels.

- › Low: the system will give an alarm reminder when your vehicle is close to pedestrians or vehicles ahead.
- › Normal: the system will give an alarm reminder when the distance between your vehicle and pedestrians or vehicles ahead is set to the normal value by the system.
- › High: the system will give an alarm reminder when your vehicle is far from pedestrians or vehicles ahead.

Intelligent turning

You can activate or deactivate the intelligent turning function through the Vehicle settings  → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Driving assist】** → **【Driving assistance】** interface on the multimedia display screen.


When adaptive cruise control or intelligent cruise control is activated, if the vehicle is entering a curve at too high a speed, the intelligent cornering function will appropriately reduce the vehicle speed.

WARNING

- › When entering and exiting a curve or driving in a curve, the system may not detect the vehicles ahead at the same lane timely. This could cause late braking. The driver must be alert and ready to take control over the vehicle at all times.
- › During driving through a curve, the system may mistakenly detect vehicles in other lanes, causing unnecessary braking.
- › For driving on a road with sharp turns (such as switchbacks), if the vehicle ahead moves out of the detection range of the sensor, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly. The driver must be alert and ready to take control over the vehicle at all times.

Rear side assist

The rear side assist system can detect vehicles behind your vehicle or in the adjacent lane through sensors on both sides of the rear bumper. If there is a risk of collision, the system will issue a warning to remind the driver to drive safely.

You can select and set the corresponding function through the Vehicle settings  → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Safety assistance】** → **【Collision avoidance assistance】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Intelligent driver assist system

i NOTICE

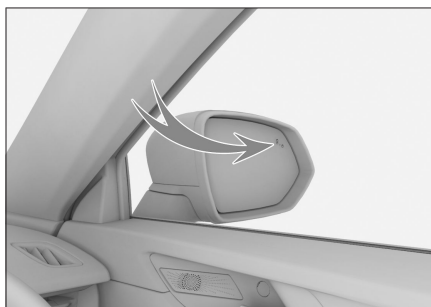
- › Keep both sides of the rear bumper clean. Do not attach any objects, and ensure that no foreign materials such as ice, snow, or mud cover the sensors, as this may affect their normal operation.
- › Improper repair or modification of the vehicle may cause the sensors to become misaligned, which can affect the proper operation of the rear side assist system. Therefore, it is recommended to maintain and repair your vehicle at the authorised service centre.
- › Disable the side assist system when towing another vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

In some cases, it may not work properly or even not work. For example:

- › For stationary targets (vehicles, pedestrians, etc.).
- › Driving in adverse conditions such as rain, and snow.
- › Driving on sharp turns, slopes, very wide or narrow lanes.

Warning lights



The warning lights are located on the surfaces of the left and right side mirrors.

⚠ WARNING

Do not paste any objects on the warning lights to avoid affecting the system warning function.

Lane change assist

During driving (with the speed exceeding 15 km/h), when the system detects that there is a vehicle in the blind area of the side mirrors or a quick approaching vehicle behind the adjacent lane, the warning light on the corresponding side should be on. If you turn on the turn signal at the same side at this time, the warning light will flash and an audible warning will sound to indicate that it is dangerous to continue changing the lane.

Intelligent driver assist system

2

Driving

Door open warning

When the system detects that there are approaching vehicles and bicycles and other targets in the adjacent lanes on both sides after the vehicle stops and that there is a risk of collision when the door is opened, the warning light at the corresponding side will turn on. If the passenger continues to open the door on the corresponding side at this point, the warning light will flash and an audible alarm will sound to indicate that it is dangerous to continue opening the door.

NOTICE

The door open warning system will only function in the following conditions:

- › The vehicle power supply is in ON mode.
- › It is within 3 minutes of switching the power supply mode from ON to OFF mode.

Rear collision warning

When the system detects that there is a fast approaching vehicle behind the subject vehicle and there is a risk of collision, the left and right turn signal lights will flash quickly, accompanied by an audible alarm, and the instrument panel prompts to remind the driver of the subject vehicle that a dangerous target is approaching, and to warn the driver of the rear vehicle to drive safely.

Rear cross traffic assistance

When reversing, if there is a pre-collision risk from the rear side of the vehicle, the system will first alert the driver through lights and sounds. If the driver does not take braking measures and continues to reverse, the system will apply the brakes to ensure the safety of the passengers in the vehicle.

CAUTION


The rear cross traffic assistance function may be limited in some cases. For example,

- › There are obstacles blocking. The system cannot detect the objects behind other parked vehicles or obstacles.
- › The current vehicle speed is too high or too low.
- › The driver depresses the accelerator pedal firmly.
- › The driver turns the steering wheel quickly.

Lane assist

The lane assist system is designed for a vehicle travelling on motorways, and other roads in good condition. By using a camera on the windscreen to detect lane boundaries, the system reminds the driver to make a correction when the driver accidentally deviates from the lane. Some of the system functions even assist the driver in correcting the direction to reduce the risk of a collision.

Intelligent driver assist system

You can select the corresponding function for setting through the Vehicle settings  → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Safety assistance】** → **【Lane assistance】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

CAUTION

The lane assist system properly works only when the lane boundaries are clearly visible. It may not work properly or even not work in some cases. For example:

- › Lane boundaries are unclear, non-standard, or otherwise obscured.
- › Things on the road surface (such as water, cracks, ruts, shadow, lettering, pedestrian crossings, bumps and pits) are interfering with the detection of the lane markings.
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › The vehicle is strongly affected by the crosswind.
- › The lanes merge or separate.
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running on a sharp turn, a narrow road, or a road prone to roll-over.

- › The vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.
- › The vehicle is travelling in the construction road area.

NOTICE

- › If the turn signal light is activated, and the steering wheel is rapidly turned to initiate a lane change before crossing the lane marker, or if there is an evident intention to execute rapid acceleration or braking maneuvers, the system will refrain from intervention. In this case, the system considers that you are actively driving the vehicle.
- › If the driver is only controlling the steering wheel very lightly, the system may not be able to detect the driver's grip on the wheel. The instrument panel will then send an alarm.

WARNING

The lane assist function is not fully automatic driving and cannot be a substitute for your visual inspection. You need to stay focused and hold the steering wheel during the use of the lane assist. Do not rely on lane assist function completely.

Intelligent driver assist system

2

Driving

Lane keeping assist

You can choose whether to provide warning or deviation correction function when the vehicle deviates from its own lane:

- › Sound: an audible alarm can be issued when the driver unconsciously deviates from the lane to remind the driver to control the direction.
- › Vibration: it can send out a vibration alarm when the driver unconsciously deviates from the lane to remind the driver to control the direction.
- › Sound + Vibration: sound and vibration alarms can be issued when the driver unconsciously deviates from the lane to remind the driver to control the direction.
- › Correction: when the driver unconsciously deviates from the lane, it can assist the driver to correct the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in the lane. If the correction fails, an audible alarm is issued to remind the driver to control the direction.

i NOTICE

- › The lane assist function will work only when the vehicle speed is 60 to 150 km/h.

- › For models in certain countries/regions, when the intelligent cruise control is activated, the warning assist function will be activated automatically even if the vehicle speed is below 60 km/h.
- › The correction function will not continuously control the vehicle, and will only control the vehicle for turning when it detects that the vehicle deviates from the lane boundary.
- › The early warning function only has an alarm function and does not control the vehicle. When an alarm prompt is issued, the driver needs to control the steering wheel in time to turn.

When the lane keeping assist function is activated, the lane boundary on the instrument panel will be as follows:

- › Not displayed: it indicates that the system has not detected a lane boundary.
- › Grey: it indicates that the system has detected a lane boundary.
- › Blue: it indicates that the system is correcting the steering wheel.
- › Red and flashing: it indicates that the system sounds a warning, and the driver needs to correct the direction in time to make the vehicle return to the lane.

Intelligent driver assist system

Emergency lane keeping

When the emergency lane keeping is activated, the system will more actively correct the steering wheel in case of an emergency to reduce the risk of collision. For example: when the driver is unaware of lane deviation or turns on the turn signal light and is about to change lanes, there is a risk of collision with the oncoming vehicle in the adjacent lane or a vehicle from the rear in the same direction, or there is a curb outside the lane.

NOTICE

The emergency lane keeping function can only operate when the vehicle speed is within the range of 60 to 150 km/h.

WARNING


In some cases, the emergency lane keeping function may not operate correctly or may be inactive. For example:

- › For smaller targets (motorcycles, bicycles, etc.)
- › For stationary targets.
- › The current vehicle is driving too close to the preceding vehicle, preventing the camera from detecting it.
- › The rear vehicle is driving too close to the current vehicle, preventing the sensor from detecting it.
- › Vehicles driving in the same direction as adjacent lanes have similar speeds.

NOTICE

Emergency lane keeping is configured in some models, and this function will vary depending on the configuration.

Smart avoidance

You can activate or deactivate the smart avoidance through the Vehicle settings  → **【Intelligent driving】** → **【Driving Assistance】** → **【Driving assistance】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

If the intelligent cruise control assist is enabled and working, when the system recognise that the vehicle is about to overtake the adjacent large vehicles (wagon, truck, bus, etc.), it will control the vehicle to move slightly away from the large vehicle. After overtaking the large vehicle, your vehicle will return to the central area of the current lane.

NOTICE

Smart avoidance will only work when the vehicle speed is 60 to 150 km/h.

CAUTION


The following situations may not activate the smart avoidance function:

- › The system detects that there is a large vehicle on the adjacent lane on one side, and there are vehicles on the adjacent lane on the other side, or the adjacent lane on the other side is a curb.

Intelligent driver assist system

- › The vehicle is driving in severe weather such as night, heavy fog, rain or snow.
- › The vehicle is in a curve.

Traffic assist

You can select the corresponding function for setting through the Vehicle settings  → **【Intelligent driving】** →

【Driving assistance】 → **【Traffic sign】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Traffic sign recognition】** : after the function is activated, traffic signs on the road can be recognised and displayed on the instrument panel to prompt the driver to pay attention to traffic sign information.
- › **【Cruise control speed limit】** : you can activate this function after the traffic sign recognition function is enabled. When the vehicle is running in a cruise control mode, if the system recognises a speed limit sign showing the speed is ≥ 30 km/h and the cruise control speed is higher than the speed limit of the sign, the system will alert the driver to reduce the vehicle speed to an appropriate range of maximum speed limit as quickly as possible.

WARNING

The traffic sign recognition function is designed to alert the driver to note traffic signs and is not intended to be used in all cases. It should not be a substitute for the driver's judgement on road speed limit messages.

In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and must always drive carefully and abide by the applicable laws and road traffic rules.

CAUTION

The traffic sign recognition function only works properly when the traffic sign is clearly visible. It may not work properly or even not work in some cases. For example:

- › A sign fades.
- › A sign is on a curve.
- › A sign is not properly positioned.
- › A sign is rotating or is damaged.
- › A sign is fully or partially blocked.
- › A sign is fully or partially covered by frost, snow, dust, etc.
- › A speed sign is placed in the position that is too far or too high.
- › A speed limit reminder or sign is attached to the road surface.
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.

Intelligent driver assist system

- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.
- › When the network conditions are poor and navigation information cannot be received.

i NOTICE

- › The unit for speed limit signs that the system identifies will be consistent with the speed unit of the instrument.
- › For multiple speed limit values on the same speed limit sign, the system will show the maximum value.
- › When multiple speed limit signs are juxtaposed, the system only displays the maximum speed limit value of the current lane of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual speed limit value of the current road.
- › The system may not be able to recognise a speed limit sign when the vehicle is turning.

Adaptive cruise control system

While you drive on straight, smooth motorways, the adaptive cruise control system allows you to maintain the vehicle at a certain speed without depressing the accelerator pedal. When the system detects that the vehicle in front of you is moving at a speed less than the cruise control speed set for your vehicle, the vehicle will follow the preceding vehicle at a set safe distance.

! WARNING

- › The adaptive cruise control system is only an auxiliary tool. It is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road and traffic conditions and the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- › The adaptive cruise control system should be deactivated when it is not in use to avoid activating it accidentally.
- › Improper use of the adaptive cruise control system may result in a collision.
- › Only use the adaptive cruise control system in good weather when the traffic is flowing well.

Intelligent driver assist system

2

Driving

- › The adaptive cruise control system is not recommended for use in conditions such as urban areas, winding roads, narrow roads, wet and slippery roads, heavy rain or other harsh weather conditions.
- › When you drive on a slope, the adaptive cruise control system is not recommended for use, based on the following points:


When driving uphill and downhill, the adaptive cruise control system cannot always maintain the set vehicle speed steadily.

When the vehicle ahead passes the top or bottom of the slope, the adaptive cruise control system may be unable to detect the vehicle ahead, causing sudden acceleration or late braking.

CAUTION

When using the adaptive cruise control system, hold the steering wheel in hand and look at the road ahead. If the driver takes his/her hands off the steering wheel for a long time, the system will send an alarm to remind the driver of taking over the vehicle.

Activating the cruise control


1. While driving, if the adaptive cruise control activation conditions are met, the adaptive cruise control standby indicator light (grey)  on the instrument panel will turn on.

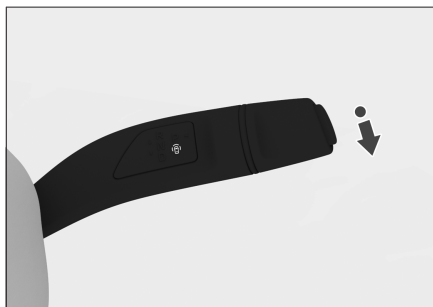
CAUTION

Conditions for activation:

- › The driver door is closed.
- › The driver wears the seat belt properly.
- › Start the vehicle and shift to the D gear position.
- › The electronic stability control system is on.
- › No parking brake is applied.
- › The vehicle speed is less than 150 km/h.
- › The vehicle driving mode is in the normal, ECO or sport mode.

Intelligent driver assist system

2. Toggle the shift lever downwards to the bottom once to activate the adaptive cruise control system, while the adaptive cruise control working indicator light (blue)  turns on.



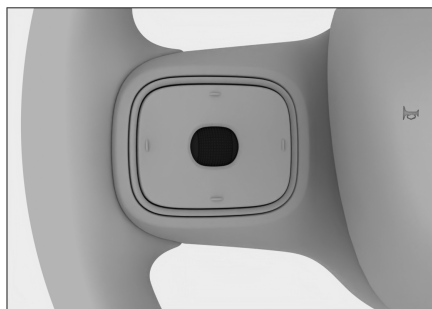
A2271215B8B9

NOTICE

- › The number in the indicator light will vary with the cruise control speed.
- › When the adaptive cruise control system is activated, if the current vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, the system sets the cruise control speed to 30 km/h. If the current speed is greater than 30 km/h, the system will start cruising at the current speed.

Adjusting the cruise control speed

Scroll the adjustment roller on the left side of the steering wheel upwards and downwards to adjust the cruise control speed.



CC9C475EDE37

NOTICE

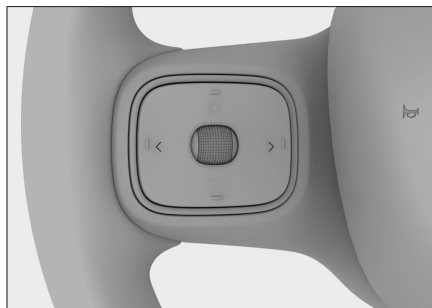
The vehicle will accelerate to the set speed only when the road ahead is clear. Otherwise, the vehicle will follow the vehicle ahead at the set distance level.

Accelerating temporarily

To accelerate temporarily during vehicle speed setting, depress the accelerator pedal. After acceleration, release the accelerator pedal to resume the previously set speed.

Adjusting the distance level

Press the decrease < or increase > button on the left side of the steering wheel to adjust the distance level.



81BB42C51C1F

Intelligent driver assist system

i NOTICE

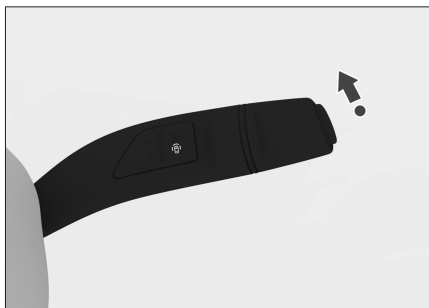
- › The distance level is not a fixed distance. Under the same distance level, the following distance will vary with the vehicle speed.
- › When the vehicle is started again, the system selects by default the distance class used before the vehicle is shut down.
- › If your vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead and cannot slow down automatically enough by the cruise control, the system will alert you and you will need to apply the brake pedal in time to maintain a safe distance. However, the system cannot issue a takeover request in time in all situations due to sensor limitations.
- › Setting a low distance level may result in a delayed reaction in unexpected situations. You are always responsible for adjusting the distance level appropriately.
- › Compared with driving on a dry road, driving on a slippery road requires a greater distance level.

Cancelling the cruise control

There are two ways to cancel the cruise control:

- › Depress the brake pedal.

- › With cruise control activated, move the shift lever up one gear and release.




8B4A74611A8A

i NOTICE

The cruise control function will automatically exit in the following situations:

- › Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate for more than 15 minutes.
- › The N, R or P gear position is engaged.
- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › The driver door is opened.
- › The parking brake is applied.
- › The anti-lock braking system is activated.
- › The hill descent control system is activated.
- › The electronic stability control system is deactivated.
- › The vehicle rolls backwards.
- › The brake disc is overheated.
- › The vehicle is shut down.
- › The vehicle driving mode is not in the normal, ECO or sport mode.

Resuming the cruise control speed

During driving, when the adaptive cruise control standby indicator light (grey)  on the instrument panel turns on, move the shift lever down to the bottom and hold it for more than 1 second before releasing it to resume the last cruise control and the last cruise control set speed.

Following start-off function

This function allows your vehicle to follow another vehicle at 0 to 150 km/h. In the case of traffic congestion, this function can slow down the vehicle to a stop by following the preceding vehicle. In this case:

- › If the preceding vehicle leaves within 3 s, your vehicle will automatically follow it.
- › If the vehicle in front stops for a long time (3 seconds to 3 minutes), press the cruise control start button on the left side of the steering wheel or lightly depress the accelerator pedal to re-start the system.
- › If the preceding vehicle is parked for more than 3 minutes, your vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.
- › If the driver opens the door or releases the seat belt, the vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.

NOTICE

This function will also be deactivated if the set cruise control speed is cancelled or the adaptive cruise control system is turned off.

Functional limitations

The adaptive cruise system may not take braking action in the following situations:

- › A vehicle suddenly appears in front of your vehicle.
- › A vehicle is running at a low speed in front of you when you are driving at a speed of over 60 km/h.
- › There is an oncoming vehicle in the same lane.
- › A vehicle or object crosses a lane.
- › Pedestrians or animals and small vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) are seen.
- › The vehicle in front decelerates suddenly.
- › Water, snow or mud splashed by surrounding vehicles hinders the sensor detection.
- › The vehicle head tilts up due to overload in the luggage area.
- › The vehicle is running on a winding or narrow road.
- › The rear of the vehicle ahead is small or is raised very high off the ground.

Intelligent driver assist system

- › Your steering wheel control is unsteady, or you're not maintaining a stable position within the lane.

Intelligent cruise control system

The intelligent cruise control system is based on the adaptive cruise control system. When the sensor detects the lane boundaries or a moving vehicle in front, it can assist the driver to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane boundary.

NOTICE

- › This function is not available in adaptive cruise control mode.
- › This function is cancelled at the same time when the set cruise control speed is cancelled.


CAUTION

In some cases, the lane centre keeping function may not work properly or not work during cruising. For example:

- › There are no lane boundaries on both sides, or the lane boundaries on both sides are unclear, non-standard, or obscured.
- › There are objects on the road that affect the identification of the lane boundaries (water, gaps, ruts, text signs, bumps or pits, etc.).
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).

- › The vehicle is strongly affected by the crosswind.
- › The lanes merge or separate.
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running on a sharp turn or a narrow road.
- › The vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.

Activating the cruise control


1. During driving, if the intelligent cruise activation conditions are met, the intelligent cruise control standby indicator light (grey)  on the instrument panel will turn on.

NOTICE

To set the cruise control speed when the intelligent cruise control function is activated, the following basic conditions must be met:

- › The driver door is closed.
- › The driver wears the seat belt properly.
- › Start the vehicle and shift to the D gear position.
- › The electronic stability control system is on.
- › No parking brake is applied.

Intelligent driver assist system

- › The vehicle speed is less than 150 km/h.
 - › The system has detected two lane boundaries.
 - › The vehicle driving mode is in the normal, ECO or sport mode.
-
2. Move the shift lever downwards continuously to the bottom twice to activate the intelligent cruise control system, and the intelligent cruise control working indicator light (blue)  on the instrument panel turns on.



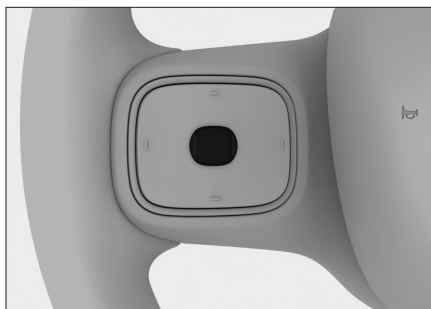
A181E7D1B8EB

NOTICE

When the adaptive cruise control system is activated, if the current vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, the system sets the cruise control speed to 30 km/h. If the current speed is greater than 30 km/h, the system will start cruising at the current speed.

Adjusting the cruise control speed

Scroll the adjustment roller on the left side of the steering wheel upwards and downwards to adjust the cruise control speed.



CC9C475EDE37

NOTICE

The vehicle will accelerate to the set speed only when the road ahead is clear. Otherwise, the vehicle will follow the vehicle ahead at the set distance level.

Accelerating temporarily

To accelerate temporarily during vehicle speed setting, depress the accelerator pedal. After acceleration, release the accelerator pedal to resume the previously set speed.

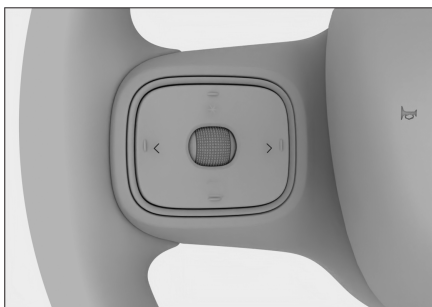
Adjusting the distance level

Press the decrease < or increase > button on the left side of the steering wheel to adjust the distance level.

Intelligent driver assist system

2

Driving



81BB42C51C1F

i NOTICE

- › The distance level is not a fixed distance. Under the same distance level, the following distance will vary with the vehicle speed.
- › When the vehicle is started again, the system selects by default the distance class used before the vehicle is shut down.
- › If your vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead and cannot slow down automatically enough by the cruise control, the system will alert you and you will need to apply the brake pedal in time to maintain a safe distance. However, the system cannot issue a takeover request in time in all situations due to sensor limitations.
- › Setting a low distance level may result in a delayed reaction in unexpected situations. You are always responsible for adjusting the distance level appropriately.

- › Compared with driving on a dry road, driving on a slippery road requires a greater distance level.

Cancelling the cruise control

There are two ways to cancel the cruise control:

- › Depress the brake pedal.
- › With cruise control activated, move the shift lever up one gear and release.



8B4A74611A8A

Resuming the cruise control speed

During driving, when the intelligent cruise control standby indicator light (grey) **i** on the instrument panel turns on, move the shift lever down to the bottom and hold it for more than 1 second before releasing it to resume the last cruise control and the last cruise control set speed.

i NOTICE

The cruise control function will automatically exit in the following situations:

Intelligent driver assist system

- › Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate for more than 15 minutes.
- › The N, R or P gear position is engaged.
- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › The driver door is opened.
- › The parking brake is applied.
- › The anti-lock braking system is activated.
- › The hill descent control system is activated.
- › The electronic stability control system is deactivated.
- › The vehicle rolls backwards.
- › The brake disc is overheated.
- › The vehicle is shut down.
- › The vehicle driving mode is not in the normal, ECO or sport mode.
- › The lanes merge or divide and are not clear in some areas, such as intersections, ramps, and waiting areas.
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running on a sharp turn or a narrow road.
- › The vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.

Functional limitations

Under the following conditions, the cruise control assist system may not take the braking measures:

CAUTION

The intelligent cruise control function may not work properly or even not work in certain situations. For example:

- › There are no lane boundaries, or the lane boundaries on both sides are unclear, non-standard, or obscured.
- › There are objects on the road that affect the identification of the lane boundaries (water, gaps, ruts, text signs, bumps or pits, etc.).
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › The vehicle is strongly affected by the crosswind.
- › A vehicle suddenly appears in front of your vehicle.
- › A vehicle is running at a low speed in front of you when you are driving at a speed of over 60 km/h.
- › There is an oncoming vehicle in the same lane.
- › A vehicle or object crosses a lane.
- › Pedestrians or animals and small vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) are seen.
- › The vehicle in front decelerates suddenly.
- › Water, snow or mud splashed by surrounding vehicles hinders the sensor detection.

Intelligent driver assist system

2

Driving

- › The vehicle head tilts up due to overload in the luggage area.
- › The vehicle is running on a winding or narrow road.
- › The rear of the vehicle ahead is small or is raised very high off the ground.
- › Your steering wheel control is unsteady, or you're not maintaining a stable position within the lane.
- › Rain, snow, fog, sand or other bad weather happens.
- › A vehicle is moving on a road with a large slope.

Hill descent control system (HDC)

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.


Hill descent control system (HDC)

While going downhill, the hill descent control system (HDC) may actively brake to ensure that the driver can maintain a constant speed and drive downhill safely.

WARNING

- › The HDC is intended only to be an aid. At all times the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and always pay attention to the surrounding traffic.
- › In case of a very steep slope, the HDC may not function and thus the vehicle can't be driven down the slope at a constant speed. At this time, you can control the vehicle speed by stepping on the brake pedal.




Activation method (PHEV models)

With the power supply in ON mode or the vehicle started, you can activate or deactivate the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system through the Vehicle settings  → **【Drive】** → **【Hill descent control】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Activation method (HEV models)



With the power supply in ON mode or the vehicle started, press the button to turn on or off the HDC.

- › After the HDC is activated, the HDC indicator light  on the instrument panel turns on.
- › After the HDC is deactivated, the HDC indicator light  on the instrument panel turns off.
- › When the HDC is working, the HDC indicator light  on the instrument panel flashes.

NOTICE

- › The HDC will automatically turn off when the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h.

Hill descent control system (HDC)

- › After activating the HDC, you can still adjust the speed by depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
-

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driving assist system safety tips

About traffic safety

Never take a risk in driving because the vehicle is equipped with driving assist systems and always ensure that the vehicle speed and driving style adapt to vision, weather, road and traffic conditions.

About modification

Suspension modification or use of tyres or wheels of non-specified size will impact driving assist systems and may cause system malfunctions.

About sound and vibration

› Some driving assist systems (such as anti-lock brake system) may create a vibration during work or the sound of the motor during working may be heard, which does not indicate a malfunction.

› When the vehicle is started across due to battery loss, the engine may not run smoothly and the anti-lock brake system or electronic stability control system warning light turns on. This is caused by low battery voltage. This does not mean that the anti-lock brake system or electronic stability control system is faulty.

Anti-lock brake system

When brake is applied or the vehicle is braked suddenly during driving on wet and slippery road, the anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps to prevent wheels from locking to maintain steering control of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

During emergency braking, do not step on the brake pedal several times or gently step on it. Otherwise, it will lengthen the braking distance.

The ABS is not designed to shorten the braking distance of the vehicle. Be sure to maintain an adequate safe distance from the vehicle traveling in front as your vehicle may require a longer braking distance, compared with vehicles not equipped with the ABS in the following cases:

- › When driving on muddy, gravel or snowy road.
- › When driving with tyre chains in place.
- › When driving on bumpy road.

Driving assist system

- › When driving on potholes or uneven road.

The ABS may not work effectively in the following conditions:

- › When the limit of tyre grip performance is exceeded (like using excessive wear tyre on snowy road).
- › When driving at a high speed on wet and slippery road.

2

Driving

Electronic braking force distribution system

The electronic braking force distribution (EBD) system is capable of automatically adjusting the front and rear braking force ratio to enhance braking efficiency. It complements the ABS for greater braking stability and thereby vehicle stability.

Braking force assist system


Stepping on brake pedal very quickly can trigger the braking force assist system to help increase the braking effect and shorten the braking distance during emergency braking.

Traction control system

When you start or accelerate on a wet and slippery road, the traction control system (TCS) helps to keep a driving force and avoid driving wheel spinning.

Electronic stability control system

The electronic stability control (ESC) system can help reduce the risk of side slip, and improve driving stability by braking individual wheel under certain driving situation.

When the ESC works, the ESC indicator light  on the instrument panel flashes. Make sure to be more careful at this time.


NOTICE

In general, the ESC should always be activated. You can deactivate the system only under following special conditions:

- › Drive with tyre chains.
- › Drive in deep snow or on soft ground.
- › The vehicle is stuck and you need to free it.

Activate the ESC as soon as you exit above conditions.

Turning on or off the system

You can activate or deactivate the electronic stability system through the Vehicle settings  → **【Drive】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

NOTICE

The ESC will automatically turn on in the following conditions:

- › The vehicle is started.
- › The vehicle speed exceeds 135 km/h.

Rollover prevention system

When the vehicle turns a corner, the rollover prevention system (RMI) determines whether there is a risk of rollover by monitoring the movement status of the vehicle. If any, RMI will decelerate one or more wheels to refrain the vehicle from a rollover accident.

HHC (Hill-start Hold Control)

When the driver starts on a slope and releases the brake pedal, the hill-start hold control (HHC) can maintain the braking force for about 2 seconds to effectively avoid rolling.

WARNING

When starting on a slope greater than 30%, the vehicle may still roll. Therefore, do not rely excessively on this feature. Please pay attention to the safe driving.


Electric power steering system

The electric power steering system can adjust the power in real time by monitoring the driving speed, so as to ensure the portability of low-speed steering and the stability of high-speed steering and enhance the sense of security.

Secondary collision mitigation system

The secondary collision mitigation system (SCM) will automatically apply the braking to the vehicle after the first collision (airbag deployment) to reduce the vehicle speed or stop the vehicle, thereby reducing the chance and injury of a second collision.

Comfortable braking


When the power supply is in ON mode or after the vehicle is started, you can activate or deactivate the comfortable braking through the Vehicle settings  → **【Drive】** → **【Comfortable braking】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

After the function is activated, it can provide a more comfortable braking experience when slowing down and stopping in non-emergency situations.

Driving assist system

Dynamic steering torque control (DST) system

Under the condition that the adhesion coefficients of left and right wheels are quite different (for example, some snow and ice covered roads, or wet and slippery roads), when the vehicle is braked or accelerated urgently, the dynamic steering torque control (DST) system will automatically adjust the steering wheel angle based on the rotational speed difference between the two wheels on the same axis and the dynamic variation of the vehicle, to correct the driving direction of the vehicle.

You can turn on or turn off the DST dynamic steering torque control system through the Vehicle settings  →

【Drive】 → 【Dynamic direction stability assistance】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

NOTICE

Only when the ESC function is enabled can the DST function be used properly.

WARNING

- › The dynamic steering torque control (DST) system is only an auxiliary tool and is not a substitute for the driver's judgement of road and traffic conditions, nor for the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- › When the dynamic steering torque control (DST) system is working, it will adjust the steering wheel angle automatically only within a limited range. The driver needs to actively adjust the steering wheel angle to ensure the correct direction of driving, depending on actual driving conditions.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Reminder

The emission control system may vary with different engine models. For the particular equipment, please refer to the actual vehicle.

Do not modify any part of the engine or emission control system.

Oxygen sensor

The oxygen sensor measures the concentration of oxygen in the exhaust gases and reports that information to the ECU in order to regulate the engine's fuel-air ratio for optimum combustion efficiency and to reduce the amount of carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, and nitrogen oxides contained in the exhaust.

Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter is the most important external purifier installed in the vehicle's exhaust system. The catalytic converter contains metallic catalysts that convert harmful gases such as carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, and nitrogen oxides into harmless carbon dioxide, water, and nitrogen through oxidation and reduction reactions.

As long as the catalytic converter is used correctly, it generally does not require maintenance. Thus, it should not be disassembled without cause. If replacement is necessary, please contact the service provider.

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter, please pay attention to the following items:

- › Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with more than the standard amount of manganese or sulphur.
- › Do not drive a vehicle with extremely low fuel level. If the fuel is exhausted, it will cause the engine to misfire (this may be confirmed by unstable engine operation or a loss of power), damaging the catalytic converter.
- › Do not idle the engine at a high speed for an extended time (5 minutes or longer).

Emission control system

2

Driving

- › When a problem with the engine is indicated (such as shutdown or performance degradation), please do not continue driving the vehicle.
- › Do not operate the engine with the spark plugs removed.
- › Do not start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it.
- › Do not add too much engine oil.
- › Please avoid striking the catalytic converter.

Turbocharger

The turbocharger can improve fuel efficiency of the engine, improve the vehicle's power and performance, and reduce the displacement of harmful compounds such as particulates and nitrogen oxides in the engine exhaust.

Fuel evaporation control unit

When the vehicle is running normally, the fuel evaporation control unit can make the fuel steam enter the engine to burn, so as to prevent the fuel steam from entering the atmosphere.

Crankcase emission control unit

The crankcase emission control unit guides the mixed gases within the crankcase (such as uncombusted fuel vapours, water vapour, and exhaust) through a connected pipe into an appropriate place in the air-intake pipe to return them to the cylinders and be combusted again. Thus, the exhaust gas can be reduced while the engine fuel economy improved.

On-board diagnostic system

The engine system malfunction warning light is part of the vehicle's on-board diagnostic system.

The engine electronic control unit equipped with the on-board diagnostic system stores various fault information (especially when it comes to exhaust-emissions fault information). The fault information will be cleared if the battery cables are disconnected, making a rapid diagnosis difficult. Therefore, do not disconnect the battery cable when checking the cause of the engine system malfunction warning light illumination.

When the vehicle is diagnosing the fuel evaporation control system, the carbon canister cut-off valve at the rear of the vehicle will produce the normal operating sound of "thump".

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.


About the system

The head up display (HUD) can project relevant information to an effective visual area within the driver's field of view. By using this system, the driver can check the vehicle information during normal driving without lowering head, thereby avoiding distracting the driver's attention from the road ahead, and preventing the eye fatigue when the driver switches the angle of view while observing the road ahead and the nearby instrument panel.

NOTICE

- › Under certain special weather conditions (such as rain, snow, strong sunlight, etc.), the information displayed on HUD may be unclear or disturbed.
- › Certain sunglasses can affect information reading.

Instructions

After starting the vehicle, you can turn on or off the head-up display system (HUD) through the Vehicle settings  → **【Display】** → **【HUD】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

After the HUD is turned on, you can conduct the following settings:

You can set the display style, custom display content, and HUD adjustment.

- › **【Display style】** : it includes normal and enhanced; after activating the enhanced mode, you can improve the projection effect of the HUD.
- › **【Custom display content】** : you can set the information displayed by the HUD.
- › **【HUD adjustment】** : you can adjust the height, rotation angle, and brightness of the HUD projection using the steering wheel buttons.

Head-up display system

NOTICE

The information displayed on the interface may vary according the vehicle configuration, software version, themes and settings. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for specific information.

2

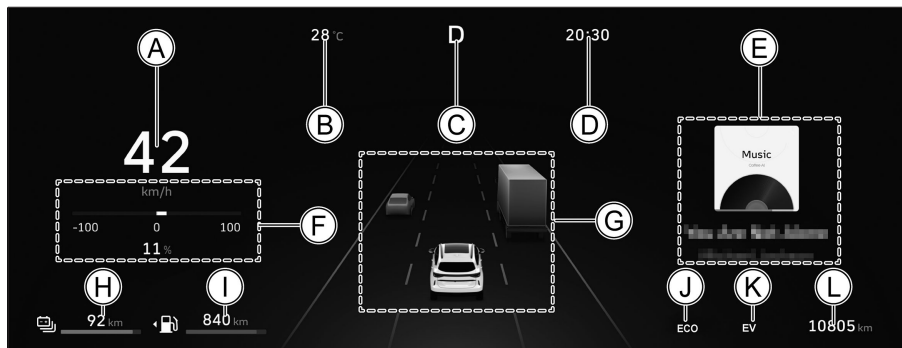
Driving

Virtual instrument panel

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Instrument panel overview (PHEV Model)



- (A) Speedometer
- (B) Ambient temperature
- (C) Gear position display
- (D) Time information
- (E) Custom information
- (F) Driving power
- (G) Intelligent driving information
- (H) Electricity indicator
- (I) Fuel gauge
- (J) Driving modes
- (K) Power mode
- (L) Mileage

i NOTICE

The data in the figure is only for effect display. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Speedometer

It displays the current speed of the vehicle.

Fuel gauge

It displays the left oil and distance to empty.

Virtual instrument panel

i NOTICE

When you drive for an extended time on a slope or around a bend, the fuel displayed may become unstable as fuel moves around in the tank.

! CAUTION

- › The range will vary depending on driving habits and road conditions.
- › When the low fuel warning light (yellow) on the instrument panel turns on, refuel promptly even if the instrument panel shows that the vehicle can travel farther.

2


Driving

Custom information

The information type displayed here can be set up as needed.

Electricity indicator

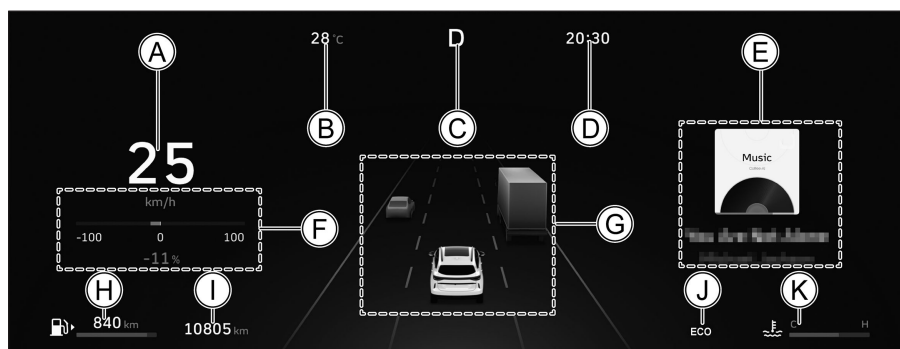
It displays the SOC and distance to empty for the traction battery pack.

You can select to display the battery in terms of range or percentage on the instrument panel through the Menu  → **【Energy management】** → **【Charge display type】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

! CAUTION

The range will vary depending on driving habits and road conditions.

Instrument panel overview (HEV Model)



173FB70D5D78

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| (A) Speedometer | (D) Time information |
| (B) Ambient temperature | (E) Custom information |
| (C) Gear position display | (F) Driving power |

Virtual instrument panel

Ⓔ Intelligent driving information

Ⓙ Driving modes

Ⓜ Fuel gauge

Ⓚ Coolant temperature gauge

Ⓛ Mileage

i NOTICE

The data in the figure is only for effect display. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Speedometer

It displays the current speed of the vehicle.

Fuel gauge

It displays the left oil and distance to empty.

i NOTICE

When you drive for an extended time on a slope or around a bend, the fuel displayed may become unstable as fuel moves around in the tank.

A CAUTION

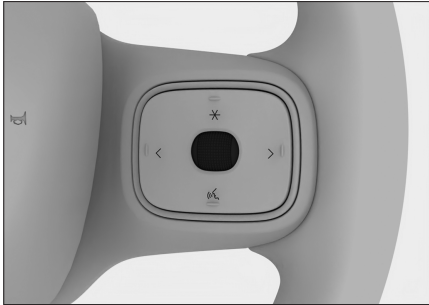
- › The range will vary depending on driving habits and road conditions.
- › When the low fuel warning light (yellow) on the instrument panel turns on, refuel promptly even if the instrument panel shows that the vehicle can travel farther.

Custom information

The information type displayed here can be set up as needed.

Virtual instrument panel

Instrument panel control



DABDD57EFEC1

2

Driving

- › Press and hold the scroll button on the right side of the steering wheel to enter the custom information edit interface of the instrument panel.
- › In the custom information edit interface, scroll the button on the right side of the steering wheel up or down to access view custom information, including: multimedia, tyre pressure/tyre temperature, etc.

Press the scroll button on the right side of the steering wheel to confirm the selection and exit the custom information edit interface.

- › Press the scroll button on the right side of the steering wheel to hide the warning messages displayed in the custom information interface.
- › When there are multiple warning messages, the custom information interface switches to the warning message interface, and scroll the button on the right side of the steering wheel up or down to access view the warning messages.

Instrument indicator lights

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Instrument indicator lights

NOTICE

- › When the power supply mode is switched to ON, some indicator lights or warning lights will turn on for a short time, indicating that the system self-test is in progress, which is normal.
- › Due to different vehicle configurations, not all the indicator lights or warning lights on the instrument panel will turn on, and the display positions of some indicator lights or warning lights are not fixed.



Primary warning message indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle currently has primary warning messages and that at least one primary warning message is manually hidden.

WARNING

Do not ignore any warning messages. Otherwise, serious damage to the vehicle or an accident may be caused.

NOTICE

You can check all current warning messages of the vehicle in the warning interface of the instrument panel.



Low beam headlight indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the low beam headlights are on.



Position indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the position lights and the license plate lights are on.



High beam indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the high beam headlights are on.

Instrument indicator lights

2

Driving



High/low beam auto-switch indicator light

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the high/low beam auto switching function is activated.

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the high/low beam auto switching function is malfunctioning. In this case, manually turn on the high beam or low beam headlights as needed, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Rear fog light indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the rear fog lights are on.



Unfastened seat belt warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the driver, the front passenger or the rear passenger doesn't fasten the seat belt.



Door open warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the door or the bonnet is open or not fully closed.



Airbag fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the airbag system is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Tyre pressure monitoring system warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, accompanied by a sound prompt. At this time, stop the vehicle for inspections and contact the authorised service centre.

If this light flashes for a period of time and turns on, it indicates that the tyre pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning, accompanied by several sound prompts.

⚠ WARNING

If this light turns on, it indicates that you should avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and drive and park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible for inspection.

Instrument indicator lights

Driving a vehicle with low tyre pressure or high tyre temperature will increase the possibility of tyre failure, and even cause serious damage to the vehicle or an accident.



Parking brake indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the parking brake is applied.

If this light flashes, it indicates that the brake disc temperature is too high or the pavement slope is too large. In this case, there is a risk of vehicle rolling. Depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle on a flat road as soon as possible.



Parking brake fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic parking brake is malfunctioning.



Auto vehicle hold indicator light

If this light turns on in grey, it indicates that the auto vehicle hold function is activated and in standby mode.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the auto vehicle hold function is activated and working.



Anti-lock braking system fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the anti-lock braking system is malfunctioning. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle can still be braked normally although the anti-lock function is not available.



Brake system fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the brake fluid level is too low, the braking force distribution system is malfunctioning, or the electronic brake booster system is invalid.

In this case, immediately park the vehicle in a safe spot and contact the authorised service centre. Otherwise, a serious accident may be caused.



Electronic stability control indicator light

If this light flashes, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is working.

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is malfunctioning.

Instrument indicator lights

2

Driving



Electronic stability control off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is deactivated.



Hill descent control indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the hill descent control system is activated and in standby mode.

If this light flashes, it indicates that the hill descent control system is working.



Electric power steering system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the power steering effect is reduced, so more force is required to operate the steering wheel. If this light remains on after the vehicle is restarted or after a short running distance, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the electric power steering system is malfunctioning, and the assisted power no longer exists. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot and turn off the vehicle, and then restart the vehicle several minutes later. If the light remains on, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

WARNING

If this light turns red, it indicates that the electric power steering system has stopped working. In this situation, greater effort will be required to operate the steering wheel to maintain steering functionality. Visit the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Coolant temperature warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the coolant temperature of the engine cooling system is excessively high. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection and repair. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.

Instrument indicator lights



Low fuel level warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the fuel level is low and needs to be refilled soon.

On slopes or during turning, the light may go on prematurely due to unstable fuel levels inside the fuel tank.

CAUTION

Never drive the vehicle when the remaining fuel level is extremely low. Otherwise, the emission control system and power system may be damaged due to running out of the fuel.



Engine malfunction warning light

If this light turns on after the engine is started, it indicates that the engine has a fault that affects emissions. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

NOTICE

- › Failure of some control systems of the vehicle (such as loss of communication signals in the hybrid system or charging system) may also cause this warning light to illuminate. If the warning light turns on, stop the vehicle at a safe place as soon as possible, turn off the ignition switch, then restart the vehicle and check the warning light. If the warning light is still on, it is recommended that you go to the authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible. Please drive carefully and avoid high speeds before the malfunction is identified.

If this indicator light turns on frequently, it is also recommended that you go to the authorised service centre for inspection even if the light is off after following the above steps.

- › The fuel tank cap not being properly installed may also cause this light to illuminate.

Instrument indicator lights



Engine maintenance warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the engine has a fault not related to emissions. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.



Engine oil pressure warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the engine oil is low. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible and shut down the engine. Otherwise, the engine parts may be seriously damaged. Check the oil level after a few minutes and add engine oil if necessary. If the engine oil level is normal and the light is always on, contact the authorised service centre.



Automatic transmission over-heat warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high (when the vehicle is started frequently on the ramp or when the accelerator pedal is stepped on in full etc., it may cause this light to turn on). At this point, park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible to run at an idle speed and apply the parking brake to cool the transmission.

If the light remains on after the above treatments, contact the authorised service centre.



Rear side assist system warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the sensor of the side assist system is blocked. In this case, check for objects covering the inner/outer surface of both sides of the rear bumper. If any, remove them right away.

Instrument indicator lights

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the side assist system is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use the side assist system, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Lane departure indicator light

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the lane departure warning function is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use this function, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Lane keeping assist working indicator light

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the lane keeping assist or emergency lane keeping function is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use this function, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Front collision warning fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the front collision warning function is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Front collision warning off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the front collision warning function is deactivated.



READY indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle is started and ready for normal driving.



Charging status indicator light (PHEV models)

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the charging cable is connected but the charging has not started.

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the traction battery is in the charging status.

Instrument indicator lights

2

Driving



Power reduction indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle has a fault that affects the power output of the whole vehicle. In this case, the vehicle power is reduced and the vehicle speed is restricted.



Low traction battery power indicator light (PHEV models)

If this light turns on, it indicates that the traction battery power is too low, and the battery must be charged soon.



Traction battery fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that a minor fault occurs in the traction battery.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that a serious fault occurs in the traction battery, and the power system will be powered off urgently.



Battery charging system warning light

If this light turns on after the vehicle is started, it indicates that the 12 V battery charging system is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Power system fault warning light

If this light turns on in yellow, it indicates that the power system of the vehicle is malfunctioning. In this case, immediately park the vehicle in a safe spot and contact the authorised service centre.

If this light turns on in red, it indicates that the power system of the vehicle has a serious fault, and the vehicle cannot continue driving. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.



Brake energy regeneration fault indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the brake energy regeneration function is malfunctioning.



One-pedal mode indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the one-pedal mode is activated.



Left turn signal indicator light

If this light flashes, it indicates that the left turn signal light is working.

Instrument indicator lights

When the hazard warning lights are on, the turn signal indicator lights and all exterior turn signal lights will flash together.

CAUTION

If the turn signal indicator light flashes quickly, it usually means that the turn signal light system is malfunctioning. Please have it checked at the authorised service centre as soon as possible. Otherwise, other drivers will not see the signal you send.



Right turn signal indicator light

If this light flashes, it indicates that the right turn signal light is working.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the turn signal indicator lights and all exterior turn signal lights will flash together.

CAUTION

If the turn signal indicator light flashes quickly, it usually means that the turn signal light system is malfunctioning.

Please have it checked at the authorised service centre as soon as possible. Otherwise, other drivers will not see the signal you send.



Adaptive cruise control indicator light

If this light turns on in grey, it indicates that the adaptive cruise control function is activated and in standby mode.

If this light turns on in green it indicates that the adaptive cruise control function is activated, and the cruise control speed is successfully set.

NOTICE

The number in the indicator light will vary with the cruise control speed.



Intelligent cruise control indicator light

If this light turns on in grey, it indicates that the intelligent cruise control function is activated and in standby mode.

Instrument indicator lights

If this light turns on in green, it indicates that the intelligent cruise control function is activated and the cruise control speed is successfully set.

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction to the power supply management system

The power management system can monitor the power consumption of each electrical equipment in the vehicle and allocate the power reasonably to improve the starting performance of the vehicle and extend the service life of the battery.

The power management system mainly has the following functions:

› **Battery monitoring**

The system will continuously monitor the voltage, current and temperature of the battery through sensors, and calculate the current charge remaining and health status of the battery according to the monitoring results.

› **Sleep power management**

The system will continuously monitor the power consumption of various electrical equipment during the parking period of the vehicle, and gradually shut down unnecessary electrical equipment according to the battery monitoring information, so as to avoid a large amount of battery discharge and ensure the starting performance of the vehicle.

› **Smart DC charging**

It continuously monitors the power consumption of various electrical equipment during the long-term parking period of the vehicle. If the system detects a drained battery, it will automatically control the traction battery to charge the battery to ensure starting performance of the vehicle.

› **Static power management**

It continuously monitors the power consumption of various electrical equipment when the vehicle is not started, and gradually shuts down unnecessary electrical equipment according to the battery monitoring information, so as to avoid a large amount of battery discharge and ensure the starting performance of the vehicle.

Power management system

i NOTICE

It is impossible for a power management system to go beyond the boundaries of physical laws. Note that there are limits to the power and service life of the battery.

Information you should know

The power management system will give top priority to ensuring the starting performance of the vehicle.

If the vehicle is not started, the battery power is supplemented by the traction battery. If the traction battery power is insufficient, the battery power will stop replenishing. The use of electrical equipment will directly consume the battery power in this case.

In these situations, the power management system will operate to control the power distribution.

Parking the vehicle for a long time

If the vehicle is not driven for several days or weeks, when the power management system detects that the battery power is too low, it controls the traction battery to charge the battery. If the traction battery power is too low to charge the battery, the power supply management system will gradually turn off the electrical equipment or reduce the electrical energy being used by the electrical equipment, so as to reduce power consumption and maintain the vehicle starting performance for a longer time.

When the vehicle is not started

If you listen to the radio or use other functions of the audio visual system without starting the vehicle, the power management system coordinates the battery and the traction battery to provide electricity in this case. If the traction battery is too low, the battery power will be gradually consumed.

If the battery power is consumed in such a manner that vehicle starting is affected, a message will be displayed on the multimedia display screen or the instrument panel. At this point, if you want to continue using these functions, you will need to start the vehicle.

3

Audiovisual system

Safety tips 194

Panel introduction..... 196

Display screen introduction 200

Multimedia display screen .. 202

Safety tips

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tips for safety

- › Ensure that your use of any of the system's features does not distract you and thereby interfere with safe driving. Your most important responsibility while driving is for the safety of the drive. You must obey all traffic regulations.
- › During driving, the driver is not allowed to operate the system and must keep the volume of the system at an appropriate level, so as not to affect driving safety due to lack of concentration.
- › This system may only be used in areas permitted by law. Some national or local regulations may prohibit use of the display screen within the driver's field of view.
- › Do not disassemble or modify the system.

- › When a failure occurs, stop using the system and contact authorised service centre. Do not try to repair the system by yourself.

About the use

- › For safety reasons, some functions may not be activated when the vehicle starts to move.
- › Do not press the buttons or knobs on the panel firmly.
- › Do not press the screen forcefully or scratch it with sharp objects.
- › When cleaning the display screen, do not use abrasive wipers or detergent containing organic solvent.
- › Do not strike the screen when image jitter occurs in process of operation.

About the radio

When driving the car, you may not find any radio stations, or you may hear noises or receive different radio signals with same frequency, depending on the environment such as road conditions, weather, etc.

About USB storage devices

Since there are various types of USB storage devices, this system may not be compatible with all USB storage devices.

About Bluetooth

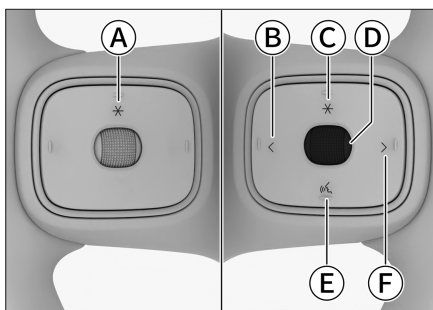
- › Since there are a great number of smartphone brands with different functions, this system may not be compatible with all the smartphones.
- › If you cannot search and find the Bluetooth device name of this system during Bluetooth pairing, restart the Bluetooth on the smartphone and search it again.
- › If Bluetooth cannot be connected, delete the paired device on the smartphone, and pair it again.
- › If Bluetooth does not function properly when in use, disconnect the Bluetooth and reconnect it.

Panel introduction

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Steering wheel buttons



- (A) Custom button
- (B) Left button
- (C) Custom button
- (D) Scroll button
- (E) Voice button
- (F) Right button

The steering wheel multimedia buttons are for the basic controls in the default option, as well as for the vehicle controls in special options and call options, increasing the scalability.

The priority from high to low is: Call Option > Special Option > Default Option.

Call option

When there is an incoming call, press the left button < to answer the call. Press the right button > to reject or hang up the call.

Special option

In special options, there will be operation prompts related to the steering wheel buttons on the relevant interface. Please operate according to the prompts.

Default option

The basic functions of the steering wheel buttons are as follows:

› For playing multimedia: press the left button < or the right button > to switch to the previous/next track, and press and hold the button for fast rewind/fast forward.

For listening to a radio: press the left < or right > button to search the previous/next active radio.

› Scroll the button upwards to increase the volume and scroll the button downwards to decrease the volume.

Press the scroll button to achieve multimedia playback/pause/mute.

Panel introduction

- › Press the custom button ✕ to execute the set function. Press and hold this button to enter the button function settings interface, and you can set up the custom function of this button.
- › Press the voice button 🗣️ to activate or deactivate the voice recognition of this system. When the phone to car is enabled, press and hold the button to wake up the voice recognition system of the third-party mobile phone.

Panel introduction

External devices

USB port

The USB port is located in the left hollow place of the auxiliary console.



2F0DCB4264A2

The port with an icon ♪ allows for inserting a USB flash drive to play multimedia content, performing system updates, and connecting a mobile phone.

i NOTICE

- › Ensure a stable connection between the external device and the input port.
- › Do not insert or remove the device during playback to avoid problems like the system failure to recognize the device normally.

Media specifications

This system supports the following media specifications:

Media	Specifications
USB flash drive	USB flash drives with a partition format of FAT16/FAT32/ExFAT.
Bluetooth audio	Support bluetooth 4.2 (compatible with 2.1 and 3.0, supports low power of bluetooth), and support Android bluetooth protocol versions: A2DP 1.3, AVRCP 1.6, HFP 1.6, MAP 1.1, PBAP 1.2

File format

This system supports the following file formats:

File	Format
Audio	MP3, AAC, WAV/WAVE, FLAC, OGG

Panel introduction

File	Format
Video	MP4, M4V, MOV, 3GP, WMV, AVI, MPEG, MKV, WebM

i NOTICE

Even files in formats supported by this system may not be normally played due to file characteristics (such as file quality, bit rate, frame rate, resolution, compression quality, or corruption), playback environment and storage devices.

Display screen introduction

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Display screen status bar

The status bar icons are displayed at the top of the multimedia display screen to display each function status. The status bar icons will change in real time according to functional characteristics, signal intensity, connection status, switch status, etc. For most status bar icons, touching will redirect you to the corresponding settings interface.

Icon	Function status
10:15	Time display
4G 	IoT connected, showing signal strength
WLAN	WLAN connected, showing signal strength
Bluetooth	Bluetooth not enabled

Icon	Function status
Bluetooth	Bluetooth not connected
Bluetooth	Bluetooth connected
Notification	Notifications in the notification centre list
Notification	No notifications in the notification centre list
Permissions	Privacy permissions Yellow: if it turns on, it indicates that location permissions are in use. Blue: if it turns on, it indicates that microphone permissions are in use. Green: if it turns on, it indicates that camera permissions are in use.
Avatar	The system default avatar is displayed when not logged in. The current logged-in account avatar is displayed when logged in.
OTA	OTA upgrade package download completed and awaiting installation; the icon will disappear after the upgrade is completed or the upgrade package expires.

Display screen introduction

NOTICE

The icons on the multimedia display status bar may vary depending on model configurations. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

3

Audiovisual system

Multimedia display screen

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Home

Touch the home button  at the bottom shortcut bar to access the home interface.



- (A) Users
- (B) Display screen status bar
- (C) Widget
- (D) Shortcut bar

Users

Touch to login to an other account and go to users interface for detailed setting.

Display screen status bar

For details, please refer to "Display screen status bar". (▷ Page 200)

Multimedia display screen

Widget

Widgets are displayed at the bottom of the home, swipe left and right to view more widgets. Touch any widget for a long time to access the edit interface.

Shortcut bar

The shortcut bar buttons are displayed at the bottom of most interfaces. Touch some shortcut buttons to quickly call up the corresponding interface or perform the corresponding function. Touch the shortcut buttons again to exit the corresponding operation.

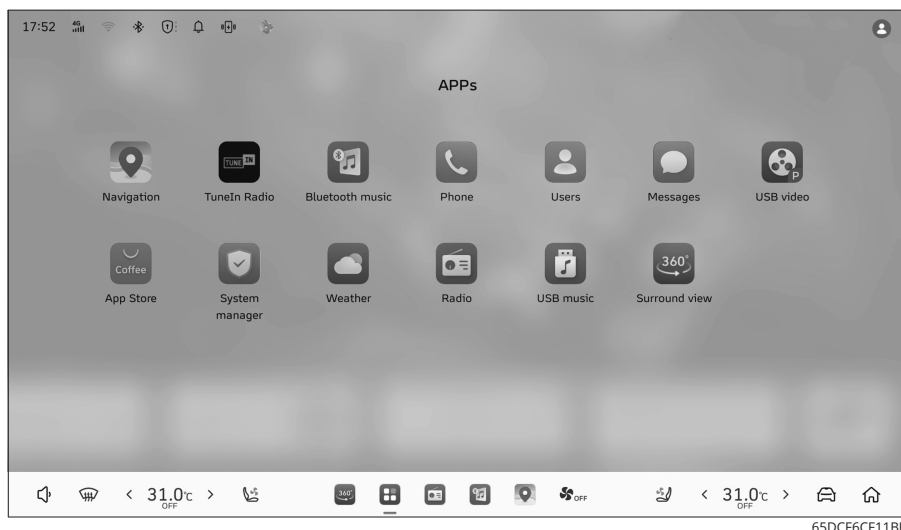
The application area in the middle of the shortcut bar is a custom area. Touch the buttons in the custom area for a long time to access the edit interface, and you can change the displayed custom buttons.

NOTICE

The icon buttons and functions in the shortcut bar may vary depending on the model configurations or system versions. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

All apps interface

Touch the all apps button  at the bottom shortcut bar to access the all apps interface.



3

Audiovisual system

Multimedia display screen

In the all apps interface, swipe up or down to see more applications, and touch the application button to access the corresponding application interface.

Long press any application button and drag to adjust the order of applications.

NOTICE

The screen display information (including pictures, icons, text and so on) shown in the manual is only for instructions. The information displayed may vary according to the vehicle configuration, software version, themes and settings. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for specific information.

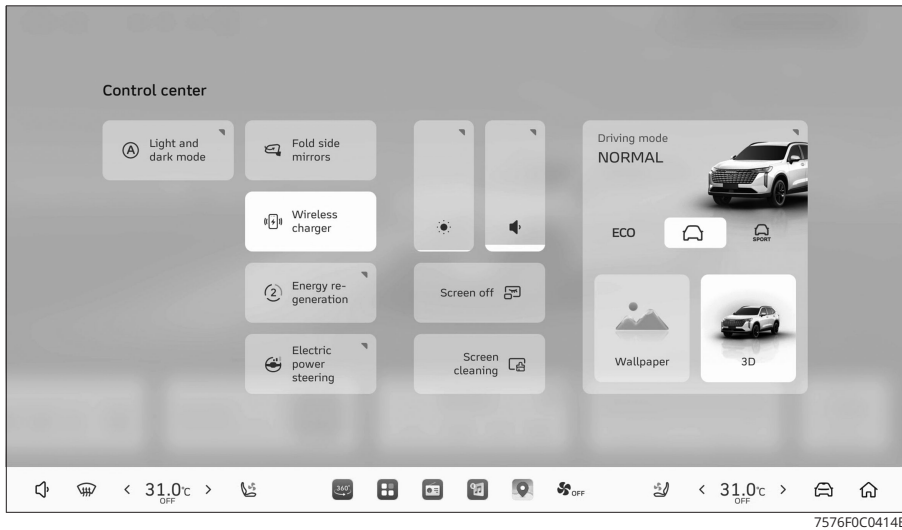
NOTICE

- › Some applications require you to log in to your users account before they can be used normally.
- › Some applications require Internet access which consumes network traffic.
- › The interfaces of some applications may change with the update of contents and the upgrade of versions. For details, refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.
- › As the system version is upgraded, the number of applications displayed in the all apps interface may increase or decrease.
- › If you purchase VIP membership, watch or download charged content, purchase related services or products, etc. in the app, you need to pay relevant fees. Please make a voluntary purchase according to your needs.
- › Some of the applications are third-party applications whose products and services are provided by and are the responsibility of third parties.
- › The app store may introduce new applications or remove existing ones, so the applications on the actual vehicle may differ from those reflected in this manual. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Control center

In most interfaces on the multimedia display screen, slide down from the top of the screen to call up the control center.

Multimedia display screen



NOTICE

The illustration of the image or icon is based on the driver screen and is for description purposes only. The displayed information may vary slightly depending on vehicle configurations. For specific related information, please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Brightness and volume adjustment

Brightness adjustment: slide to adjust the screen brightness. Touch the upper right area of the sliding bar to open the brightness adjustment window.

Volume adjustment: slide to adjust the volume. Touch the upper right area of the sliding bar to open the volume adjustment window.

Shortcut switch

Touch the switch to activate or deactivate the corresponding function.

Touch the **【Edit】** button to access the edit interface and you can change the shortcut switch icon.

Exiting the control center

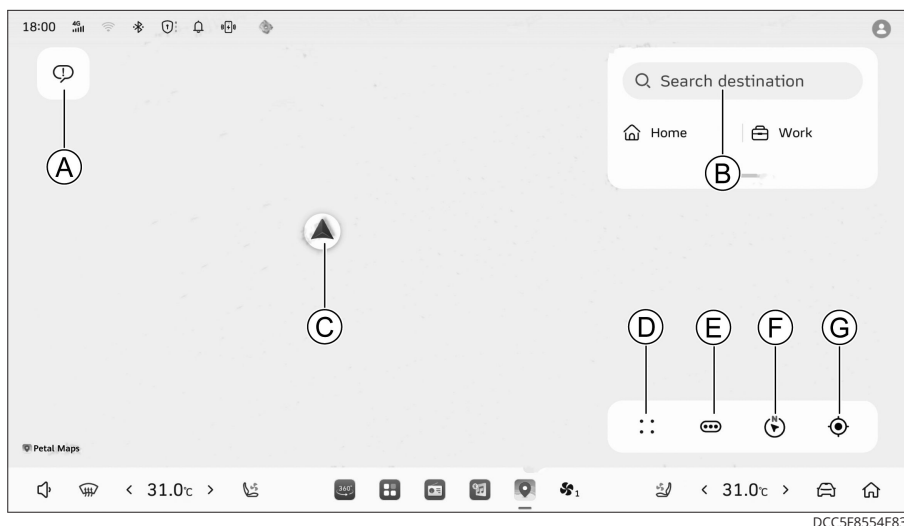
Touch a non-button area or slide up to close the control center.

If there is no operation for a period of time, the control center will automatically hide.

Multimedia display screen

Navigation scenarios

Touch the **Navigation** button in the all apps interface to access the navigation scene interface.



- ① Feedback
- ② Destination search
- ③ Vehicle position
- ④ Map setting
- ⑤ Real-time traffic
- ⑥ Map view
- ⑦ Back to my car location

Some function buttons will automatically hide if they are not operated for a period of time. Touch the non-button location on the map to call up the hidden function buttons.

Destination searching

Touch this button to access the destination search interface, which includes the following functions:

- › You can search for a destination by entering the destination name and the keywords.
- › You can view the search history and destinations, and you can also edit them or set up one of them as a destination.
- › You can set your home or work address and set up it as a destination quickly once you have set up it.

Feedback

Feedback with comments and suggestions is available.

Map setting

Touch this button to access the map settings interface, which includes the following functions:

- › You can add or remove favourite places.
- › You can set route preferences, audio status, navigation broadcast and other functions.
- › You can download or update offline maps.
- › You can perform privacy management, cache clearing, etc.

Real-time traffic

Touch this button to turn on or off real-time traffic. After turning on, the current real-time traffic conditions will be displayed in the networked state.

Map view

Touch this button to switch the map view to head-up (2D), due north-up (2D) or 3D mode.

Vehicle position

It shows the position of your vehicle on the map.

About navigation

- › It is advised not to operate this navigation while driving the vehicle. Please operate under the premise of ensuring safety after parking to prevent traffic incidents or other dangerous situations.
- › The functions and service provided by the navigation, including location search, route planning, travel navigation and traffic conditions, are for reference only. Please do not take them as the only reference for driving or travelling. Please refer to the actual traffic and road conditions, and strictly abide by traffic laws and traffic rules.
- › Using services that require Internet access, such as online navigation, traffic conditions and data downloads, consumes network traffic.
- › Some online functions and services will not be available when the vehicle is not connected to the Internet and only offline navigation is used.


Multimedia display screen

Entertainment scenarios

In the **【All apps】** interface, touch the corresponding application icon on the to enter the corresponding application.

Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for the content and functions of entertainment scenes.

Local media contains **【Radio】** , **【Bluetooth music】** , **【USB Music】** and **【USB video】** .

To play Bluetooth music, go to the Vehicle settings  → **【Connect】** interface, pair and connect to audio playing equipment.

To play **【USB music】** and **【USB video】** , first insert the USB flash drive that stores media files into the on-board USB port.

About the radio

When driving the vehicle, you may not find any radio stations, or you may hear noises or receive different radio signals with same frequency, depending on the environment such as road conditions, weather, etc.


TuneIn Radio

Touch the **【TuneIn Radio】** button in the all apps interface to access the TuneIn Radio interface, and you can use the TuneIn Radio function.

NOTICE

- › To use the online media services, login and bind the relevant account. Follow the interface prompts for login and binding.
- › There may be a delay after purchasing a membership due to network signal etc. If you have not obtained your benefits after a few minutes, restart your system.
- › Network traffic will be consumed when you use online media services that require Internet access.

Display setting


You can switch to the display settings interface through the Vehicle settings  → **【Display settings】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

- › **【Driver screen】** : you can adjust the instrument screen brightness.
- › **【Center console screen】** : you can adjust the multimedia display screen.

Multimedia display screen

- › **【Button backlight】** : you can adjust the backlight brightness of the physical buttons of the vehicle.
- › **【Driver display mode】** : you can select the display mode of the instrument panel.
- › **【Light and dark mode】** : you can set the background dark and light colours of the screen display.
- › **【Screen off settings】** : you can set the screen off style.

Connection settings

You can switch to the connection interface through the Vehicle settings  → **【Connect】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Device connection

In the connection settings interface, touch the **【Device connection】** button to access the Bluetooth setting interface.

- › **【Bluetooth】** : you can touch the switch to turn on or off the Bluetooth.
- › **【Bluetooth visible】** : when this switch is turned on, other devices are allowed to detect Bluetooth of this system and perform pairing connection.
- › **【My device】** : it displays paired devices. Touch the paired device name, and the Bluetooth automatically connects when the Bluetooth for this system detects this device. Touch the management button to delete the paired device and other operations.
- › **【Other devices】** : it displays a list of found Bluetooth devices. Touch the device name in the list to initiate a pairing request for pairing connection. Touch the search button to search for Bluetooth devices again.

WIFI settings

In the connection settings interface, touch the **【WIFI】** button to access the WIFI setting interface.

- › **【WIFI】** : touch the switch to turn on or off the wireless network.
- › **【Saved networks】** : it displays the current connection and the name of the network that has been connected to, and can be disconnected, ignored, etc.
- › **【Automatic mobile data switching】** : it uses mobile data when Wi-Fi connection is unstable.

Multimedia display screen

- › **【Network list】** : it displays available networks you search for, and you can touch the network name in the list for connection. It can also display the current connection and the name of the network that has been connected to, and can be disconnected, ignored and other operations.

Hotspot settings

In the connection settings interface, touch the **【Hotspot】** button to access the hotspot settings interface.

- › **【Hotspot】** : touch the switch to turn on or off a hotspot. When turned on, other devices can connect to this hotspot to access the internet.
- › **【Password】** : it displays the hotspot password, and you can change it to a custom password.
- › **【Connected devices】** : it displays a list of devices connected to the vehicle's hotspot.

Sound settings

You can switch to the sound setting interface through the Vehicle settings  →

【Sound】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

Volume adjustment

In the sound settings interface, touch the **【System sounds】** button to access the volume adjustment setting interface.

You can adjust navigation volume, voice volume, media volume, call volume, and incoming call ringtone volume.

Voice broadcast

In the sound settings interface, touch the **【System sounds】** button to access the voice broadcast setting interface.

You can adjust incoming voice call announcement, alarm voice broadcast, and multimedia sound reduction during navigation broadcast.

Alarm sound

In the sound settings interface, touch the **【System sounds】** button to access the alarm sound setting interface. You can set vehicle alarm sound, speed-sensitive volume control, system button sound, adaptive starting volume, and startup animation music.


Multimedia display screen

Sound-effect settings

In the sound settings interface, touch the **【Sound-effect settings】** button to switch to the sound effect setting interface.



You can set the best listening position, ambient sound effect, and equaliser.

Voice

You can enter the voice setting interface through the Vehicle settings  → **【Voice】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

The voice can recognise and execute voice commands to control vehicle functions quickly and improve operation convenience.

You can wake up the voice in the following ways:

- › Press the voice button  on the steering wheel.
- › Touch the voice icon  on the multimedia display status bar.
- › Voice wake-up: you can activate this function by system default wake-up words or custom wake-up words.

WARNING

When you control the vehicle functions using the voice, pay attention to the surroundings and personal safety to avoid pinch, collisions and other severe accidents.

NOTICE

- › When using the voice control function, make sure that voice data authorization is enabled.
- › The success rate of voice recognition will be affected by environmental noise, network signal, usage habits, pronunciation and other factors. The specific use effect is subject to the actual vehicle environment.
- › Some functions of the voice require Internet access.

Wake-up settings

- › **【Voice wake-up】** : once activated, you can use the wake-up words to wake up the voice.
- › **【Default wake-up word】** : you can wake up the voice by the system's default wake-up word.

Multimedia display screen

- › **【Custom wake-up words】** : you can set voice custom wake-up words according to personal preferences.

Dialogue settings

- › **【Delayed listening time】** : you can choose the duration of continuous conversation with the voice control.

Voice skill book

You can view the shortcut commands of the voice control to control the vehicle function.

In some scenarios, there is no need to wake up the voice, and you can directly say the command. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for details.

Coffee space

Touch the **【Coffee space】** button in the all apps interface to access the coffee space interface. It can quickly provide you with different scenario needs, including temporary leave mode, camping mode, immersive mode, etc.

i NOTICE

The application is constantly being updated, and the displayed content and functions are subject to the actual vehicle display.

i NOTICE


When using the coffee space feature, make sure that all of the following conditions are met:


- › The vehicle is in the ON state.
- › The gear is in P gear position.
- › The parking brake is applied.
- › The remaining battery power is $\geq 30\%$.

i NOTICE

- › Different models are equipped with different scene modes. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for details.
- › Vehicle operating conditions may vary across different models and driving modes. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for details.

Phone

Touch the **【Phone】** button in the all apps interface to access the phone interface. If Bluetooth is not connected, go to the Vehicle settings  → **【Connect】** → **【Device connection】** interface to turn on the Bluetooth for pairing.




- › On the left keyboard, after entering the phone number, touch the dial button  to make a phone call.
- › Touch the **【Contacts】** button to display the contacts list after synchronising. Touch a contact or a phone number in the list to make a phone call.
- › Touch the **【Call records】** button to display the recent records after synchronising. Touch any contact record in the list to make a phone call.

NOTICE

- › Since there are a great number of mobile brands with different functions, this system may not be compatible with all mobiles.
- › If you cannot search and find the Bluetooth device name of this system during Bluetooth pairing, restart the Bluetooth on your mobile and search for it again.
- › If Bluetooth cannot be connected, delete the paired device on the mobile, and pair it again.
- › If Bluetooth functionality is abnormal during use, disconnect it and then reconnect.
- › To use the functions of contacts and call records, authorisation is required on the paired mobile phone. Generally, in the process of pairing, a grant permission will be displayed on the mobile phone.
- › In the **【Connect】** → **【Device connection】** interface, after deleting a Bluetooth device from the paired devices, the contacts and call records saved in the vehicle will also be deleted.

Call interface

After establishing a call, switch to the call interface.

- › Touch the hang up button  to end the call.
- › Touch the microphone button  to turn on or off the vehicle microphone.
- › Touch the private/hands-free button  to access the private mode or the hands-free mode.

Private mode: calling through the phone connected to the Bluetooth of the system

Hands-free mode: calling through the on-board speaker or microphone

Multimedia display screen

› Touch the keyboard button  to enable or disable the keyboard.

App Store

In the all apps interface, touch the **【App Store】** button to access the App Store interface.

In this interface, you can install and manage applications.

System manager

Touch the **【System manager】** button in the all apps interface to access the system manager interface.

In this interface, you can conduct one-click optimisation, free up storage space, manage the whitelist, and manage applications, etc.

Weather

In **【All apps】** interface, touch the **【Weather】** button to access the weather interface.

You can view weather information, future weather and other information in the weather interface.

NOTICE

Weather information is for reference only.

Users

Touch the users button in the all apps interface to access the users interface. When you use or login to another account for the first time, you can login by scanning the code, email and password through the mobile APP.

In the users interface, you can switch or logout of accounts, view user agreements and privacy policies, etc.

Logging out

Touch the **【Log out】** button to log out of the current login account. If you check delete account information, the account-related information stored in this vehicle will be cleared.

Messages


Touch the **【All apps】** button to access the messages interface.

Multimedia display screen

Messages pushed by the system are displayed. Touch an item to view the message details.

System

About


You can view the system software version, check for updates, view or edit the device name, restart the system network, and conduct factory reset through the Vehicle settings  → **【System】** → **【About】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

NOTICE

About factory reset:

- › Factory reset will restore all vehicle settings to their default values. All local files, application data, personal files, etc. will be deleted. Please operate with caution.
- › Conditions for factory reset: when the power supply is in ON mode, please stop and shift to P, and do not change the status during the process.
- › During the factory reset, the interface cannot be operated.


General use

You can set language, region time zone, auto time synchronisation, manual time setting, manual date setting, and auto time zone synchronisation through the  Vehicle settings → **【System】** → **【General】** interface on the multimedia display screen.


NOTICE

Manual time and date settings can only be performed when the auto time synchronisation switch is turned off.

System permission

You can view the privacy policy, user agreement, and set the authorization permissions for each application through the Vehicle settings  → **【System】** → **【Privacy】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

About online upgrade

Your vehicle has the "online upgrade" function (OTA for short). You can access the vehicle system update interface through the Vehicle settings  → **【System】** → **【About】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Multimedia display screen

When the vehicle system detects an online upgrade task, it will send a message or pop-up window to prompt you for upgrade. Upgrade to the new version as soon as possible to provide the latest functions for your vehicle.

Precautions

- › Before the upgrade, make sure that the vehicle is in the P or N gear position, apply the parking brake, and ensure that the vehicle battery and traction battery are fully charged.
- › Before the upgrade, please ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe place that does not affect normal traffic, and allow enough time for upgrade.
- › During the upgrade, the vehicle can not be used. Fault prompts and screen restarts are normal phenomena. Do not power it off or change the vehicle status.

Upgrade result

You will be notified of the upgrade result once it is completed. After a successful upgrade, the vehicle can be restored to use.

i NOTICE

The system upgrade may cause modifications in some functions and changes in the use habits of related functions. Please read the update details or manual carefully to understand the changed functions before the system upgrade. If you are not familiar with the changes in the functions, please use them with caution to avoid vehicle failure or personal injury caused by misoperation.

If the upgrade fails, the vehicle will remain stationary, and you can take the following actions:

- › You can try to check the update again for upgrade. If the upgrade is successful, the vehicle can be restored to use. Please contact the authorised service centre immediately if the upgrade fails many times.
- › Check the instrument panel screen. If a fault prompt appears, the vehicle may pose a safety risk and must not be used. Please contact the authorised service centre immediately. If no fault prompt appears, the vehicle may also have inconsistent controller software version information. It is advisable to contact the authorised service centre to confirm the vehicle status before using the vehicle.

4 Safety

Seat belts	218
Airbags	222
Child restraint system.....	230
Vehicle anti-theft system	238
Emergency shut-off system	240
Event data recorder	241

Seat belts

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety tips

4

Safety

- › The shoulder belt must not hang on the neck area, or pass under the arm-pit area.
- › The lap belt must be secured as firmly as possible around the lower part of the hip bone.
- › Each seat belt can only be used by one person. More than one person (including children) must not share the same seat belt.

If more than two people wear the same seat belt, when the vehicle is involved in a collision, not only the seat belt can not disperse the impact, but there is a danger of two people colliding with each other.

- › The seat belt shall not be twisted or slack.
- › Do not wrap the seat belt around objects with sharp corners, or it may be damaged during an accident.

- › Never use a seat belt that has undergone strong impact from an accident or which is otherwise damaged.
- › Do not remove, disassemble or alter seat belts.
- › Do not use the seat belt with foreign object in the buckle.
- › We suggest that when you use the seat belt, you shall keep your seat belt clean. Oil and water-based materials such as soil, oil stain, water, beverage, food residue, shall not be attached to the seat belt so as to ensure that it can be pulled out and retracted smoothly.
- › Do not use organic substances, such as benzene or gasoline, to clean the seat belts, and do not bleach or dye them.
- › Children must not play with the seat belt.

If a child accidentally wraps the seat belt around his or her neck while playing with the seat belt, he/she may not be able to pull the seat belt, resulting in serious injury or even death. In this case, if the locking tab of seat belt cannot be released, use a pair of scissors to cut the seat belt.

- › Inside seat belt design is mainly based on adult size, so please install proper child restraint system for children.

When the seat belt is being used correctly, if the belt is in contact with the child's neck or jaw area or slack to the hip, please switch to a child seat instead.

If the child is old enough to use inside seat belt, he (she) shall wear the belt properly.

› Precautions for pregnant women

We strongly suggest that you use the seat belt. You can also get effective advice by consulting with your doctor. The recommended way of wearing the seat belt for pregnant women is fundamentally the same as for other passengers. However, such passengers should take note of the following:

- 1) The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible in the abdomen area, below the bulge of the belly.
- 2) The shoulder belt should run over the passenger's shoulder, over the chest area but avoid the passenger's abdomen area.

If the seat belt is worn incorrectly, during emergency braking or collisions, the seat belt may tighten over the abdomen area, causing injury or even death to the pregnant mother and unborn child.

› We strongly recommend that passengers who are ill or disabled use the seat belt. You can also get effective advice by consulting with your doctor.

- › When the seat belt is not in use, the it shall be fully retracted. Do not twist or jam the seat belt, and do not allow the seat belt to touch any sharp objects. The seat belt buckle cannot be blocked by foreign objects. Otherwise, correct engagement of the seat belt locking tab and the buckle will be affected.

Wear the seat belt properly

- › Adjust seat backrest until it is vertical or near-vertical and provides adequate back support.
- › The seat belt shall be neat.
- › The shoulder belt should lie flat on the centre of the shoulder and not on the neck or elsewhere away from the shoulder.
- › The lap belt should be, as much as possible, fastened around the lower part of the hip bone.

WARNING

- › During the drive, all passengers must fasten their seat belts in the correct fashion. Failure to do so can lead to severe injury or even death from collisions or emergency braking as passengers' bodies are not sufficiently bound to seats.

Seat belts

- › At all times, even if the driving distance is short, all passengers including the driver in the vehicle should wear their seat belts properly. Otherwise if an accident occurs, the risk of injury or death can be increased.

Pretensioner seat belts

When a collision occurs, the pretensioner can instantly tighten the seat belt, so that the passengers are best restrained and protected.

The force limiter maintains seat belt load at an acceptable level and reduce force exerted on the passenger's chest.

Operating conditions

The pretensioner seat belt works when the vehicle receives a significant impact from the front.

It may not work when the following mild collisions occur:

- › Head-on collision with a cement concrete wall and the like at a speed below 25 km/h .
- › Head-on collision with a small area object such as a fixed telegraph pole or a tree at a speed below 35 km/h .

The pretensioner seat belt may not fully function when the vehicle is subjected to the following severe collisions.

- › The vehicle rolls over 90° or 180°.
- › The collision comes from the side or rear of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Your vehicle may only be equipped with pretensioner seat belts for some seats. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

WARNING

- › When using the pretensioner seat belt, wear it correctly and adjust the seat to the optimal seating position. Failure to do so will reduce the seat belt performance, leading to severe injury or even death.
- › If you want to install, remove or dismantle the pretensioner seat belt, be sure to contact the authorised service centre. If the pretensioner seat belt is not used correctly, it will not work properly and may cause severe injury or even death in an accident.
- › The pretensioner seat belt cannot be used repeatedly.

After the pretensioner has been deployed during the first collision, you should not extend or retract the seat belt again. At this point, be sure to contact the authorised service centre for replacement.
- › When the pretensioner seat belt is working, white smoke will come out with a loud sound, but it will not cause a fire and is harmless to the human body.

- › When the pretensioner seat belt is scrapped, be sure to contact the authorised service centre. Accidental movements of the pretensioner seat belt can cause personal injury.

Three-point seat belt instructions

1. Hold the locking tab and pull the seat belt out of the retractor. Do not twist the seat belt in the process. If you are unable to pull the seat belt out of the retractor, you will need to pull hard the seat belt and then release it. Doing so will trigger the retractor and allow you to pull out the seat belt smoothly.
2. Insert the locking tab into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.



4265102F61C5

3. Pull up the shoulder belt and adjust the lap belt until the lap belt tightly fits the body. In this way, the pelvis can bear the impact, reducing the risk of injury.

4. Check that the shoulder belt is across the chest and the middle of the shoulder tightly. Thus, any impact will be distributed across the upper skeleton.
5. Press the unlock button on the buckle to retract seat belt. After the buckle is released, hold on the locking tab until the seat belt is fully retracted. Take care that the locking tab does not knock into other passengers or any nearby objects.

Airbags

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tips for safety

- › Airbags cannot be reused.

Once an airbag has been used, it will not work anymore in the second or subsequent collisions, so be sure to contact authorised service centre for replacement.

- › The airbags are auxiliary devices to protect the passenger safety and should be used with the seat belts. In order to obtain the effect of airbags, the passengers must wear the seat belts correctly and maintain the correct posture.
- › Proper use of airbags can realize their safety effectiveness to the full. If it is used improperly, it may not play a security role, but may bring harm to passengers.

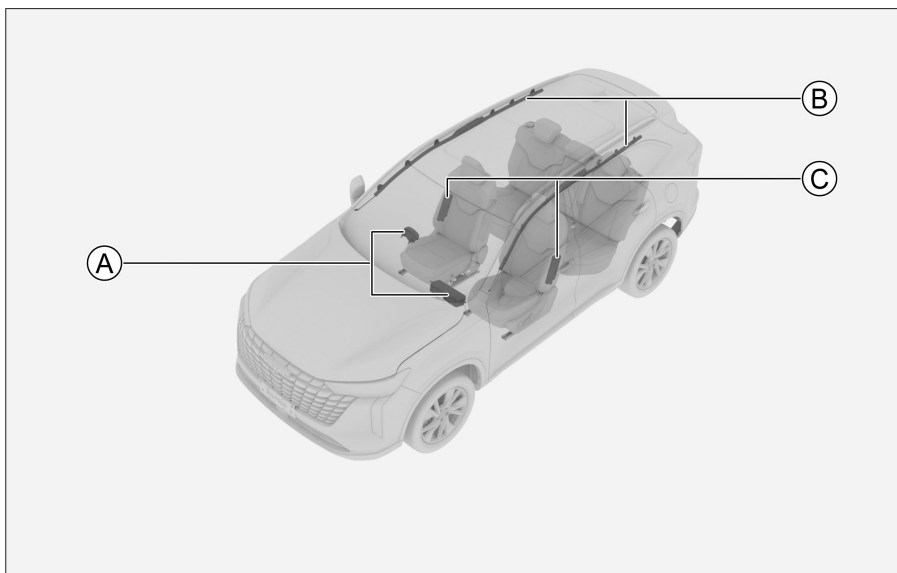
- › When the airbags are being deployed you will notice some loud sounds and smoke. This is normal and will not lead to a fire. The smoke released, however, may cause breathing difficulty when inhaled by individuals suffering from asthma or other respiratory disease. At this moment, it is safer to flee out of the vehicle immediately. If you are unable to evacuate from the vehicle, open vehicle doors or windows to let fresh air in.
- › When any debris (or gas) released by airbags deployment comes in contact with the eyes or skin, clean such material off using water as soon as possible. Otherwise, individuals with skin hypersensitivity may experience a skin reaction.
- › Do not touch airbag components after the airbag has been deployed. Because its component parts will become very hot, it may cause burns and other major injuries.
- › Please do not use the airbag for any other purposes.
- › Please get in touch with authorised service centre if you need to install radio equipment. Electromagnetic waves emitted by wireless equipment have a significant impact on the airbag control units.
- › It is forbidden to strike or squeeze the airbags and the position around it.

Airbags

Avoid the condition that the airbags cannot work normally during accident or the airbags are accidentally deployed in normal driving, which will cause serious injuries to passengers or even death.

Airbags

Airbags



B13EBA822EA7

① Front airbags include the following types:

Driver airbag

Front passenger airbag

② Curtain airbag

③ Side airbag

Front airbags

Overview

The front airbags are located in the steering wheel and the instrument panel in front of the front passenger seat, with the airbag signs on the steering wheel and the instrument panel. When the vehicle encounters a strong front impact, the seat belt will be tightened. At the same time, the airbags at the driver's side and front passenger's side will deploy in order to distribute and cushion any force directed towards the head and chest.

Operating principle

When a head-on collision occurs resulting in moderate or severe impact, the sudden deceleration of the vehicle will be detected by a sensor. At this time, the control device will immediately deploy the airbags.

Precautions

- › The airbag may deploy when the bottom of the vehicle encounters the following kinds of severe impact:
 - 1) The vehicle hits the kerb.
 - 2) The vehicle falls into, or runs over a deep pit or drain.
 - 3) The vehicle climbs over steps and hits or falls on the road.
- › The airbags may deploy when the vehicle rolls over 90° and 180°.
- › The airbags may not deploy when the vehicle encounters the following kinds of severe impact:
 - 1) Head-on collision with a cement concrete wall and the like at a speed below 25 km/h (mph).
 - 2) Head-on collision with a small area object such as a fixed telegraph pole or a tree at a speed below 35 km/h (mph).
- › If the object suffering impact changes in its shape or moves, the impact force from the collision will be reduced. In this case, the airbags may not deploy. When the vehicle collides into a truck from the back, if the vehicle runs under the cargo box, as the impact force recognized by the sensor is weak, the airbags may not deploy.
- › The airbags may also not deploy depending on the angle and direction of collision, even when vehicle speed is relatively high.
- › Do not allow your body to get too close to the steering wheel or to the lower part of the instrument panel:
 - 1) When driving a vehicle normally, the driver should stay away from the steering wheel as far as possible while maintaining the correct driving position.
 - 2) The front seats should be as far from the instrument panel as possible.

Airbags

4

Safety

3) All passengers should fasten seat belts for optimal protection.

- › Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean on the instrument panel while the vehicle is running.

This is because front airbags deploy at a high speed and with great force. If the passenger is too close to the airbags at this point, he or she may suffer severe injury or even death.

- › Do not allow children to stand in front of the airbag.

When front airbags deploy, it may cause severe injury or even death to child passengers. All children should sit on the rear seats and be protected with the correct restraints.

- › Adhere to the following rules; otherwise these items may cause severe injury to passengers during airbags deployment:

- 1) Do not place objects on the instrument panel or lean umbrellas and the like against it.
- 2) Do not leave objects in the storage box exposed.
- 3) Do not hang any objects on windows or on the interior rearview mirror.
- 4) Do not install any decorations on the steering wheel horn.
- 5) Do not place luggage, pets or other objects between the airbags and the driver or the front passenger.

- › Do not clean the inside of the vehicle with water or cleaning solution.

The inflator in airbag is a deployment device. If it becomes damp, the normal operation of airbag will be affected or even serious injuries or death will be caused.

- › Do not apply wax, stickers or similar items to the airbag cover.

Failure to adhere to the advice can impede the airbags deployment.

- › Do not damage the airbag cover.

Otherwise, it will not work normally. Therefore, be sure not to open or damage the airbag cover.

- › Do not dismantle, modify or install devices such as airbags, the instrument panel and the steering wheel.

Improper operations can cause airbags to malfunction or deploy by mistake, thereby causing severe injuries or even death.

- › Do not modify the suspension.

If the vehicle height or suspension stiffness is changed, airbags may deploy by mistake, thereby causing severe injuries or even death.

- › Consult with the authorised service centre for assistance when you need to install a guard plate and air deflector at the front of the vehicle.

Modifications to the front of the vehicle can cause distortion to impact signals sent to the airbag sensor, thereby triggering accidental deployment of airbags, which may cause serious injuries or even death.

- › Be sure to consult with the authorised service centre for assistance when you need to repair the front of the vehicle or the cabin.


Improper repairs can cause distortion to impact signals sent to the airbag sensor, thereby leading to airbag malfunctions, which may cause serious injuries or even death.


Front passenger airbag switch



A74EE750D3CE

The front passenger side airbag switch is located on the side of the front passenger instrument panel.

Use a mechanical key to turn the front passenger airbag switch to OFF position to turn off the front passenger airbag. At this moment, the front passenger airbag OFF indicator  OFF on the reading lamp becomes illuminated.

Use a mechanical key to turn the front passenger airbag switch to ON position to turn on the front passenger front airbag. At this moment, the front passenger airbag ON indicator  ON on the reading lamp becomes illuminated.

WARNING

- › Be sure not to place a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat while the front passenger airbag is operational. Otherwise, there will be a serious accident or even death.
- › If, under special circumstances, it is necessary to install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, please turn off the front passenger airbag. Otherwise, there will be a serious accident or even death.

In other conditions, you are advised not to turn the front passenger airbag lock to OFF, as the front passenger airbag would not be able to deploy if there was an accident.

Airbags

Side airbag

Overview

The side airbag is located inside the outer liner of the seat backrest, with the word "AIRBAG" marked on the seat backrest. The side airbag is a supplement in guaranteeing safety in addition to the seat belt. In case of collision from one side, the side airbag will reduce the harm to passengers in the vehicle and prevent further collisions.

Operating principle

When the vehicle encounters collision from one side, the sensor will detect an acute change in acceleration on this side and then send a signal to the control device. The side airbag will deploy instantaneously if the operating conditions of the airbag are met.

When a side collision occurs, only the side airbag on the collision side will deploy. In case of collision on the front passenger side of the vehicle, the side airbag on the front passenger side will still deploy even though there is no one in that seat.

Precautions

- › The side airbag may not deploy sometimes when the vehicle encounters mild collisions described below:
 - 1) Front collision.
 - 2) A minor side impact with weak signal received by the electronic control unit.

3) Rear collision.

4) Rollover.

- › Never place any object over the side airbag. Otherwise, the normal work of the side airbag will be disturbed.
- › Never attach any object around the side airbag deployment area. Such objects may be dislodged when the side airbags deploy.
- › Never remove, repair or modify the seat with a side airbag and parts around the side airbag deployment area.

Warning label (Schematic diagram)



The identification is located on the central pillar. It serves to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with side airbags and to pay attention to the relevant issues.

Curtain airbags

Introduction

The curtain airbags are located on the roof lower edge; you can find airbag marks on pillar. The curtain airbags are a supplement to seat belt. In case of side collision, curtain airbags will reduce the damages to interior passenger and prevent subsequent collisions.

Operating principle

In the event of a side collision, a sensor detects an sharp change in the lateral acceleration of the vehicle and send a signal to the control module. If the curtain airbag work conditions are met, the curtain airbags on the collision side will instantly inflate.

Precautions

- › The curtain airbags may not inflate when the vehicle encounters mild impact such as what is described below:
 - 1) Front collision.
 - 2) Electronic control unit receives a weak signal of mild side impact.
 - 3) Rear collision.
 - 4) Rollover.

- › Please do not remain close to the vehicle doors, door pillars or roof rail, or kneel on a front seat. Otherwise, passengers' heads may suffer a severe impact when the curtain airbag inflates, which may cause serious injuries or even death. Pay attention especially when children are in the vehicle.

- › Never attach any object near where the curtain airbag will inflate. Otherwise, there is a risk that object may launch into the cabin when the curtain airbag inflates.

- › Do not hang heavy or sharp objects on the coat hook.

Please do not use clothes hangers if you wish to hang your clothing, and opt for the coat hook directly instead. Otherwise, the clothes hangers may launch into the cabin when the curtain airbag inflates.

- › Do not remove, repair or modify parts near where the curtain airbag will inflate.

Do not modify roof, roof handrail, roof handrail bracket and side roof lamp.

Child restraint system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Therefore, some of the equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed in your vehicle or only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult the dealer where you purchased the vehicle.

Safety instructions for child seat

Warning label



90A96F30A2E6

This label, which is located on the front passenger side sun visor, is used to alert you that your vehicle is equipped with front airbag. Note the relevant precautions.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use rear-facing child restraint systems on the seats protected by front airbag (activated), which may cause the child suffering from death or serious injury.

› If the child seat is not installed with child seat fixing device, use the seat belt to install it and then follow the installation instructions provided with the child seat.

› Properly fasten the child seat inside the vehicle.

If you install the child seat incorrectly, in the event of emergency braking or accident, severe injury or even death may occur.

› Do not place unsecured child seat protection devices in the vehicle.

If you leave it inside the vehicle, it may come into contact with passengers or other objects in the event of emergency braking or severe impact, causing a severe injury or even death.

› Even when the child has sat in a child seat, take care that his or her head or body is not leaning against the vehicle door pillar or roof rail.

When the curtain airbag fully deploys, it can be very dangerous in this scenario as the deployment force may cause severe injury or even death to the child.

Child restraint system

- › Depending on the different types of child seat, when installing or removing a child seat, refer to the install instructions and precautions provided with the child seat.
- › It is recommended that children are seated on the rear outboard seating positions, with the appropriate child restraint system. Be sure to leave enough space around the child seat and adjust the seat in front if necessary.

WARNING

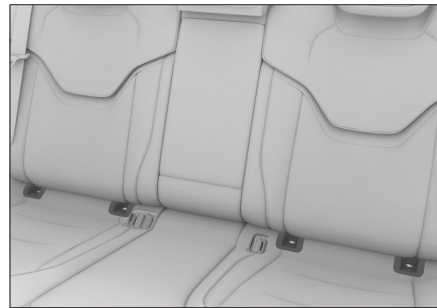
The following instructions must be followed for using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- › When installing a child seat on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated. The front passenger airbag must be activated as soon as the child seat on the front passenger seat is removed.
- › If necessary, adjust the seat backrest angle until there is stable contact between the seat backrest and the child seat.
- › Take care that the seat belt is not twisted as it passes through the guide fitting and does not bend over the edge of the guide fitting.
- › For Group II and Group III child seats, ensure that the guide device mounted on the child seat headrest are in front of the seat belt anchorage point.

When install a child seat using any passenger seat, take care that the seat belt is not twisted as it passes through the guide fitting and does not bend over the edge of the guide fitting.

Fixing points for the child seat

Lower fixing points for the child seat



D1CF83A6FFE7

There are 4 lower fixing points for the child seat in the clearance between the rear seat backrest and the seat cushion.

Top tether strap fixing point for the child seat



3C8DFD86A861

Child restraint system

There are 2 fixing points for the child seat top tether strap on the rear side of rear seat backrest.

WARNING

Fixing points for the child seat are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by the correctly fitted child seat. Under no circumstances should they be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Child restraint system

Recommended child seat categories

ISOFIX is a mounting system for vehicle child seats based on international standards. In the user's country, child seats need to meet the ECE R44 norm. Only child seats that meet the above norm are allowed to be used in vehicles.

Weight group

Group	Weight (kg)	Age
0	Maximum 10	0 to 9 month(s) old
0+	Maximum 13	0 to 2 year(s) old
I	9 to 18	9 months to 4 years old
II	15 to 25	4 to 7 years old
III	22 to 36	6 to 12 years old
Rear-facing child seat, weight group 0/0+ Forward-facing child seat, weight group I Cushioned child seat, weight group II / III		

Recommended child seats

Group	Manufacturer	Type	Installation method
0+ / I	Joie	Spin 360	ISOFIX + support legs
III	Osann	Max	ISOFIX + seat belt
	Graco	Booster Basic	Seat belts

NOTICE

For optimum protection, use the recommended child seat type, including shoulder and lap belt guide devices.

Not every child is suitable for choosing a child seat in weight group, and likewise not every child seat is suitable for your vehicle. It is therefore important to check that a child sits properly in the child seat and that the child seat is securely fastened in the vehicle.

Installation method of child seats

When installing a child seat, you must use a child seat that is appropriate for the child's age, weight and size to restrain an infant or a child in the seat.

Child restraint system

Applicability information of child seats or different seat positions

Weight group	Seat position			
	Front passenger seat		Rear seats	
	Front passenger airbag ON	Front passenger airbag OFF	Rear-row external side	Rear-row centre
Group 0	X	U	U	X
Group 0+	X	U	U	X
Group I	X	U	U	X
Group II	X	U	U	X
Group III	X	U	U	X

Note: the letters filled in the above table are defined as follows:

U - this seat position is suitable for universal child restraint systems approved for this weight group.

X - this seat position is not suitable for use with child restraint systems in this weight group.

If you need to install a child seat on the front passenger seat, please pay attention to the following items:

- › Please be sure to turn off the front passenger airbag switch, otherwise serious danger to children will be caused when the airbag deploys.
- › When installing a child seat on the front passenger seat, please adjust the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

Applicability information of vehicle ISOFIX positions for ISOFIX child seats

Weight group	Size model	Fixed module	ISOFIX position
			Rear-row external side
Portable bed	F	ISO/L1	X
	G	ISO/L2	X
Group 0	E	ISO/R1	IL
Group 0+	E	ISO/R1	IL
	D	ISO/R2	IL
	C	ISO/R3	IL

Child restraint system

Weight group	Size model	Fixed module	ISOFIX position
			Rear-row external side
Group I	D	ISO/R2	IL
	C	ISO/R3	IL
	B	ISO/F2	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	IUF

Note: the letters filled in the above table are defined as follows:

IUF - this seat position is suitable for universal forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint systems approved for the weight group.

IL - this seat position is suitable for special ISOFIX child restraint systems on the list; Such restraint systems may be special, restricted or semi-universal.

X - the ISOFIX position is not suitable for use with ISOFIX child restraint systems for this weight group and/or of this size.

Child seats installed the seat belt

1. Move the front passenger seat as far forward as possible so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child in the rear.
2. If the angle of the backrest of the seat where the child seat is installed is adjustable, adjust it to a proper position to ensure that the backrest can support the child seat in a stable manner.
3. If the headrest of the seat where the child seat is installed is adjustable or removable, adjust it to a proper position or remove it, so that the child seat does not interfere with it, and can be able to fit snugly against the backrest.
4. Pull out the shoulder belt, move the belt along the indicated route on the child seat and insert the locking tab into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.
5. With your body weight pressing down on the child seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract and tighten. There must be no signs of slack to the shoulder belt.
6. Shake the child seat gently to make sure that it has been properly secured.

Child restraint system

CAUTION

If a raised seat cushion is used, do not remove the headrest. Also, the top of the headrest shall be adjusted to a position that is flush with or closest to the top of the child's head.

Child seats installed with the child seat fixing device

ISOFIX or LATCH is a standard protection system specially designed for child seats. Child seats can be installed with ISOFIX or LATCH in both seats on the lateral sides of the rear row.

1. Move the front passenger seat as far forward as possible so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child in the rear.
2. If the headrest of the seat where the child seat is installed is adjustable or removable, adjust it to a proper position or remove it, so that the child seat does not interfere with it, and can be able to fit snugly against the backrest.
3. If the angle of the backrest of the seat where the child seat is installed is adjustable, adjust it to a proper position to ensure that the backrest can support the child seat in a stable manner.
4. Slide the child seat lock mechanism into the lower fixing point, and ensure that the two ISOFIX lock mechanisms are securely fixed.
5. When fixing the top tether strap, refer to the instruction manual of the child seat.
6. Shake the child seat gently to make sure that it has been properly secured.

CAUTION

If a raised seat cushion is used, do not remove the headrest. Also, the top of the headrest shall be adjusted to a position that is flush with or closest to the top of the child's head.

WARNING

- › If the child seat is equipped with a top tether strap, tighten the top tether strap according to the installation instructions and precautions provided with the child seat.

Otherwise, severe injury or even death may be caused in the event of emergency braking or collision.

Child restraint system

- › Do not lower the headrest after fastening the child seat top tether strap to its fixing point.

Otherwise, it may come into contact with the top tether strap and loosen the strap as a result. In the event of emergency braking or collision, this can cause the child seat to turn, bringing severe injuries or even death.

Vehicle anti-theft system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

System introduction

The vehicle anti-theft system helps to keep your vehicle and valuables from being stolen. The vehicle anti-theft system will emit audible and visual alarm if someone tries to enter the vehicle by force.

WARNING

Do not attempt to modify the vehicle anti-theft system.

Instructions

System activation

1. After the door is successfully locked by the button on the smart key, passive entry system or the mechanical key, the vehicle enters the pre-armed mode.

In the pre-arm state, you can still operate the vehicle without triggering the anti-theft alarm.

2. After the pre-arm state lasts for about 15 seconds, the vehicle will automatically enter the armed state, and the vehicle anti-theft function will be activated.

CAUTION

Please check whether all the vehicle doors and tailgate are completely closed. Otherwise, the vehicle anti-theft system cannot be activated.

NOTICE

The central control button will fail in the armed and anti-theft state of the vehicle.

System off

After the vehicle doors and tailgate are unlocked via the smart key button or the PEPS, the anti-theft function of the vehicle is turned off.

Alarm trigger condition

In the armed state, the following actions can trigger an alarm:

- › Use the mechanical key to open the vehicle doors.
- › Forcibly open the door or tailgate.
- › The bonnet is opened.

Alarm cancellation

After triggering the anti-theft alarm of the vehicle, you can reset the alarm by the following operations:

- › Switch the power supply switch to ON mode.

Vehicle anti-theft system

- › Start the vehicle successfully.
- › With the power supply switch in OFF mode, unlock the door or tailgate using the button on the smart key or the passive entry system.

Emergency shut-off system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Emergency cut-off system

When the impact sensor detects a certain degree of impact, the system will cut off the high voltage current and fuel supply, and minimize the danger caused by electric shock and fuel leakage.

If the emergency cut-off system is activated, the vehicle cannot be restarted. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

4

Safety

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Event data recorder (EDR)

System description

The vehicle is equipped with the event data recorder (EDR).

The event data recorder (EDR) is mainly used to record data related to the vehicle dynamic system and safety system when a vehicle collision happens in order to help understand the operation conditions of the vehicle system. However, since collision severity and type vary, EDR may not record the data.

i NOTICE

EDR records data only when a vehicle meets a major collision. When the vehicle runs normally, EDR does not record data.

Data reading

In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties (such as law enforcement agencies) can use the CANoe device to connect laptops and on-board diagnostic connectors and access EDR to read the data recorded in EDR.

The data reading device can be purchased from the CANoe software vendor.

The data items recorded by EDR and their purposes are as follows:

Data item	Purpose
Longitudinal delta-V	To record the vehicle longitudinal acceleration delta-V during collision
Maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V	To record the maximum longitudinal acceleration delta-V during collision
Time to reach maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V	To record the time to reach the maximum longitudinal acceleration delta-V during collision
Vehicle speed	To record the vehicle speed during collision

Event data recorder

Data item	Purpose
Service brake, on or off	To record the brake pedal state during collision
Driver seat belt state	To record the driver seat belt state during collision
Accelerator pedal position, percentage of wide open position	To record the accelerator pedal position during collision
RPM	To record engine revolutions per minute during collision
Power-on cycle in event	To record the power-on cycle in the event during collision
Power-on cycle when reading	To record the power-on cycle when reading during collision
Event data logging complete status	To record the event data logging state during collision
Time interval between this event and the previous event	To record the time interval between this event and the previous event during collision
Vehicle identification number	To record the vehicle identification number during collision
ECU hardware number of EDR data	To record the ECU hardware number of EDR data during collision
ECU serial number of EDR data	To record the ECU serial number of EDR data during collision
ECU software number of EDR data	To record the ECU software number of EDR data during collision
Longitudinal acceleration	To record the vehicle longitudinal acceleration value during collision
Lateral acceleration	To record the vehicle lateral acceleration value during collision
Lateral acceleration delta-V	To record the vehicle lateral acceleration delta-V during collision
Maximum recorded lateral acceleration delta-V	To record the maximum lateral acceleration delta-V during collision

Event data recorder

Data item	Purpose
Square of the maximum recorded resultant delta-V	To record the square of the maximum resultant delta-V
Time to reach maximum recorded lateral acceleration delta-V	To record time to reach maximum recorded lateral acceleration delta-V
Time to reach maximum recorded resultant delta-V	To record time to reach maximum recorded resultant delta-V
Yaw angle speed	To record the yaw angle speed of the vehicle
Steering angle	To record the steering angle of the steering wheel before collision
Tend	To record the destination of the collision event
Year	To record time information inside the vehicle
Month	To record time information inside the vehicle
Day	To record time information inside the vehicle
Hour	To record time information inside the vehicle
Minute	To record time information inside the vehicle
Second	To record time information inside the vehicle
Gear position	To record the current gear position status during collision
Engine throttle position, percentage of fully open position	To record the engine throttle position before collision
Parking system status	To record the status of the parking system before collision
Turn signal switch status	To record the turn signal switch status before collision
Driver seat belt pretensioner deployment time	To record the deployment time of the driver's seat belt pretensioner during collision
Driver frontal airbag deployment time (first stage)	To record the deployment time of the driver's frontal airbag during collision (first stage)
Driver side airbag deployment time	To record the deployment time of the driver's side airbag during collision
Driver side curtain deployment time	To record the driver side curtain deployment time during collision

Event data recorder

Data item	Purpose
Front passenger seat belt status	To record the status of the front passenger seat belt during collision
Front passenger seat belt pretensioner deployment time	To record the deployment time of the front passenger seat belt pretensioner during collision
Front passenger frontal airbag suppression status	To record the suppression status of the front passenger airbag during collision
Front passenger frontal airbag deployment time (first stage)	To record the deployment time of front passenger airbags during collision (first stage)
Front passenger side airbag deployment time	To record the deployment time of the front passenger side airbags during collision
Front passenger side curtain deployment time	To record the deployment time of the front passenger side curtain during collision
Occupant protection system alarm status	To record the alarm status of the passenger protection system during collision
Tyre pressure monitoring system alarm status	To record the tyre pressure monitoring system alarm status before collision
Brake system alarm status	To record the brake system alarm status before collision
Cruise control system status	To record the status of the cruise control system before collision
Adaptive cruise control system status	To record the adaptive cruise control system status before collision
Anti-lock brake system status	To record the status of the anti-lock brake system before collision
Auto emergency braking system status	To record the automatic emergency braking system status before collision
Electronic stability control system status	To record the electronic stability control system status before collision
Traction control system status	To record the traction control system status before collision

Event data recorder

Data item	Purpose
Synchronous time before the event	To record the synchronous time before the event during collision

Data disclosure

Any data recorded by EDR will not be disclosed to third parties except in the following circumstances:

- › With the consent of the vehicle owner or the lessee.
- › To be used in a lawsuit at the official request of the police, court, or government department.

However, if necessary, the data recorded by EDR will be used to:

- › Research and develop the vehicle safety performance.
- › For R&D purpose, data is disclosed to the third parties without disclosing specific information about the owners and their vehicles.



20 horizontal blue lines for writing.

5

Emergency

On-board tools.....	248
Emergency tyre repair and inflation	249
In the case of a vehicle accident	252
Jump start	256
Engine overheating	260
Towing.....	262
Service and rescue	267

On-board tools

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Storage location for on-board tool kit

On-board document packages are placed in the storage box on the side of the front passenger, and other on-board tools are placed in the luggage area.

CAUTION

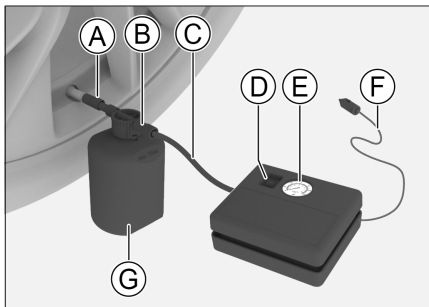
- › The driver himself must be familiar with the placement and use of the on-board tool in order to cope with emergency.
- › You must return the on-board tool kit to their designated positions after use, and fix them securely. Random placement may cause accidents.
- › If the vehicle is equipped with a fire extinguisher and first aid kit, the fire extinguisher and the medicine in the first aid kit have an expiry date and need to be checked regularly, and shall be replaced in time if necessary.

Emergency tyre repair and inflation

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Inflater and tyre repair fluid



DEFEDCAE40C8

- Ⓐ Outlet tube
- Ⓑ Air inlet
- Ⓒ Inflation tube
- Ⓓ Inflator switch
- Ⓔ Barometer
- Ⓕ Power cable
- Ⓖ Tyre repair liquid

In case of tyre leak caused by puncture of foreign matters, emergency maintenance can be carried out with inflater and tyre repair fluid.

i NOTICE

- › The inflater and tyre repair fluid are only suitable for sealed tyres with puncture on the tread.
- › The tyre repair fluid has limited ability to seal the puncture of the tyre wall. If the tyre has large fissures, cracks or similar damage, tyre repair fluid shall not be used to seal the tyre.
- › The tyre repair fluid tank must be replaced after use. It is recommended that it be replaced by professionals from authorised service centre.

! WARNING

- › If the tyre repair fluid has expired, please replace it and treat it as hazardous waste.
- › Eating the tyre repair fluid by mistake is harmful to health. It may cause allergic reaction even in the case of skin contact. In case of contact with skin, immediately wash the sealing liquid from skin with water or soapy water.
- › The tyre repair fluid must be stored out of reach of children.

Emergency tyre repair and inflation

Emergency tyre repair

1. If the tyre is repaired in a place where vehicles pass, put a warning triangle at an appropriate position and turn on the hazard warning lights.
If the tyre puncture is caused by nails or similar objects, leave the objects in the tyre. This helps to seal the puncture hole.
2. Take out the tyre sealant tank and inflator under the luggage area cover plate.
3. Attach the speed limit sign that comes with the tyre sealant tank on the centre of the steering wheel as a reminder to drive within 80 km/h (50 mph).
4. Shake the tyre sealant and use it evenly. Make sure that the inflator switch is off (in position "0"), and then take out the power supply cord and inflation tube.
5. Unscrew the cover of the tyre sealant inlet, connect the inflation tube to the tyre sealant inlet and tighten it, and connect the outlet tube of the tyre sealant to the tyre valve.

CAUTION

The inflation tube cannot be bent.

6. Plug the inflator power supply cord into the 12 V outlet and start the vehicle.

7. Switch the inflator switch to the position "I" to start the inflator and inflate the tyre to 240 to 250 kPa.

WARNING

Do not stand beside the tyre when operating the inflator. If the tyre is cracked or uneven, the inflator must be turned off immediately.

CAUTION

- › When the inflator is turned on, the air pressure will be very high at first, then decrease slowly, and gradually increase with the inflation air pressure.
 - › The inflator should not run for more than 10 minutes; otherwise, there is a risk of overheating.
 - › If the tyre pressure is still lower than 170 kPa after inflation, it means that the tyre has a large hole, so please do not continue to inflate it. At this time, you are suggested to contact the authorised service centre.
8. Turn off the inflator, remove the power supply cord from the 12 V outlet, and remove the tyre sealant from the tyre valve.
 9. Drive immediately (within 1 minute) at a speed of 20 to 60 km/h for about 5 km, so that the tyre sealant can seal the tyre evenly.

Emergency tyre repair and inflation

10. Connect the inflater and read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.

- › If the tyre pressure is lower than 170 kPa, it means that the tyre is not completely sealed. At this time, do not continue driving and contact the authorised service centre.
- › If the tyre pressure exceeds 170 kPa, the tyre should be inflated to the pressure specified in the tyre pressure label.

11. Turn off the inflater, disconnect the inflation tube and the power supply cord, and install the dust cover of the tyre valve.

⚠ CAUTION

After the tyre is inflated, install the dust cover of the tyre valve to prevent the gravel and dust from damaging the tyre valve.

⚠ WARNING

After the tyre is repaired with inflater and tyre sealant, the driving speed should not exceed 80 km/h and the driving distance should not be more than 200 km. You are recommended to repair or replace the damaged tyre as soon as possible, and inform the maintenance technician that the tyre contains tyre sealant.

Tyre inflation

When the tyre pressure is too low, you

can use an inflater to inflate the tyre.

1. Make sure the inflater is turned off, and take out the power cord and inflation tube.
2. Screw the inflation tube into the tyre valve.
3. Plug the power cord into the 12V outlet and start the vehicle.
4. Turn the inflater switch to position "I" to start the inflater.

⚠ CAUTION

The inflater shall not run for more than 10 minutes; otherwise, there is a risk of overheating.

5. Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in the tyre pressure label.
6. Turn off the inflater, disconnect the inflation tube and the power cord, and install the dust cover of the tyre valve.

In the case of a vehicle accident

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Traffic incidents occur to the vehicle

When the vehicle is forced to stop on road because of traffic incidents or vehicle breakdown, in order to warn other vehicles, take the following measures:

- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Place the warning triangle behind your vehicle in accordance with local traffic laws and regulations.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury and death when a traffic accident occurs, please observe the following precautions:

- › If bare wires are detected inside or outside vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.

- › Do not touch the high-voltage components, orange high-voltage cables and their connectors. Otherwise, serious injuries or death caused by electric shock may occur.
- › If there is a liquid leakage, do not touch such liquid. It may be a liquid leaking from the traction battery pack. If the skin or eyes are inadvertently exposed to the liquid, rinse with plenty of water and seek medical advice immediately to avoid further injury.
- › If the traction battery is damaged, there may be a potential fire risk. In this case, place the vehicle in a safe area for monitoring to prevent fire.
- › If you are not sure whether the vehicle is damaged or safe, stay away from the vehicle as soon as possible.
- › When an accident causes a fire on the vehicle, use a special fire extinguisher for electrical fires to extinguish the fire. Use of water or improper fire extinguishers may result in serious injuries or death due to electric shock.

A vehicle getting stuck or bottoming out

When travelling in snow, mud and sand, the vehicle is easy to get stuck or bottom out. Therefore, you should drive carefully.

If the vehicle gets stuck, you can try to operate as below:

In the case of a vehicle accident

1. Shut down the vehicle and apply the parking brake.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand around the stuck tyres.
3. Place wood blocks, stones or other materials to help improve the tyre adhesion.
4. Restart the vehicle.
5. Release the parking brake and speed up carefully to get the vehicle out of the pit.

When the vehicle gets stuck or bottoms out, please contact professional rescue teams or service providers if the vehicle cannot get out of the trap by the methods above. Dragging the vehicle unprofessionally for rescue is prohibited.

WARNING

While freeing the vehicle, pay attention to the following:

- › Make sure that the surrounding area is clear and free from any other vehicles, objects, or persons.
- › Please be especially careful, considering that the vehicle will suddenly rush forwards or backwards when the vehicle gets out from the pit.
- › Check whether there are larger objects such as stones in the mud or snow when getting the vehicle out of mud or snow. Please remove them timely to avoid damage to the vehicle body and sensors during getting out.

WARNING

Please observe the following precautions during rescue to avoid potential vehicle damage and ensure personal safety.

- › When using a tow hook for towing, securely fasten a recovery blanket in the middle of the tow rope. This precaution prevents the tow hook or rope from breaking and rebounding, thus averting potential vehicle damage and ensuring personal safety.
- › Never drag the vehicle from the side or vertically, with the best angle of the tow hook within the range of 5° up and down and 25° left and right.
- › Never drag the vehicle during launch start. The initial towing speed should not exceed 5 km/h (start off slowly until the tow rope is taut).
- › When using a tow hook for towing, ensure that the drag or towing force does not surpass the weight of the vehicle.

For the fire accident of vehicle

If heavy smoke emits from the vehicle or a fire accident occurs, you should pull over to a sparsely populated place immediately, switch the power mode to OFF, and evacuate passengers away from the vehicle quickly. Under the condition of ensuring personal safety, perform the following operations:

In the case of a vehicle accident

- › Call the police according to the on-site situation.
- › If you can confirm that the fire is small and does not involve a high-voltage system, you can try to use a vehicle fire extinguisher to extinguish the fire in time; if the fire is large or the origin of fire is near the power battery, immediately move away from the vehicle and stand to the upwind position, and notify the firefighters immediately. Do not use water to extinguish the fire by yourself to prevent the risk of electric shock.
- › Anyone inhaling heavy smoke accidentally should be transferred for medical attention as soon as possible.
- › Due to the possibility of reburning of the lithium battery, even if the open fire is extinguished, do not approach the vehicle rashly and note whether the vehicle still has heavy smoke or open fire.

How to prevent fires

Fire accidents pose a serious threat to your life and property. Make sure to follow the methods below to prevent fire accidents:

- › Do not store flammable and explosive substances in the vehicle.
During the hot season when the sun is shining, the interior of the vehicle is very hot, and if flammable and explosive items such as lighters, perfume and alcohol are stored in the vehicle, they can easily cause a fire or even an explosion.
- › Do not leave a clear bottle with unfinished water in the vehicle.
When exposed to the sun, especially in the hot season, a clear water bottle resembles a convex lens, and the converging sunlight can easily cause burns to the interiors of the vehicle or even cause a fire.
- › Do not dispose of cigarette butts at will.
Stub out cigarette butts and properly dispose of them.
- › Do not modify the vehicle wiring or install additional electrical appliances.

5

Emergency

WARNING

- › The burning of lithium batteries will produce high temperature and harmful gases, so please stay away from the burning vehicle as much as possible.
- › Please do not touch any liquid leaked from the power battery. In case of contact with skin or eyes accidentally, please rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical advice in time to avoid further injury.
- › If firefighters use water to extinguish the fire, please do not touch the water on the ground to avoid the risk of electric shock.

In the case of a vehicle accident

The addition of other high-powered electrical appliances (lights, speakers, etc.) can cause an excessive load on the wiring, which can easily lead to overheating and even a fire. Do not use fuses of different colours or amperage or replace fuses with other metal wires.

- › Always carry a fire extinguisher on your vehicle and know how to use it. Check and replace the fire extinguisher on a regular basis to ensure its reliability.
- › Visit the authorised service centre on schedule for inspection and maintenance.

In case of vehicle immersion accident

To avoid vehicle immersion, we suggest that when the early warning is issued for rainstorms, floods and other severe conditions, the vehicle can be parked on higher terrain in advance, not the low-lying parking lots and underground garages with unreasonable design.

When the vehicle is partially or completely immersed in water, the vehicle will not have a greater risk of electric shock due to immersion in water, provided that the body and chassis are not damaged. However, professional rescue personnel must still wear the necessary personal protective equipment to handle flooded vehicles. After the vehicle is removed from the water, the battery safety switch should be disconnected in time.

WARNING

Handling a flooded vehicle without the necessary personal protective equipment may result in serious personal injury or death.

Jump start

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Symptoms of a drained vehicle battery

- › The vehicle cannot be started.
- › Headlamps are darker than normal.
- › The horn cannot give a sound or the sound is weak.

Jumper start method (PHEV models)

If you are unable to start the vehicle with depleted battery, you can jump to the battery of another vehicle to start the vehicle.

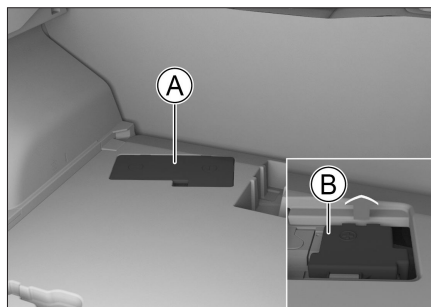
The wire cross-section of jumper cables should be no less than 25 mm².

⚠ CAUTION

- › Not all vehicle batteries can be used. The jump start can only be performed with a battery having a rated voltage of 12 V.

- › Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.

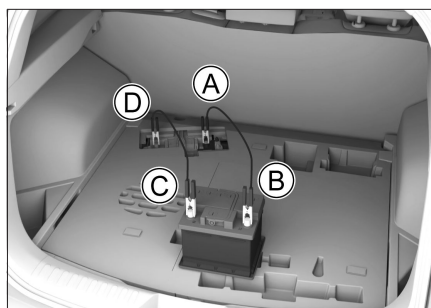
1. Take out the luggage area cover.
2. Take out the battery cover plate and open the protective covers for the positive the battery.



Ⓐ Battery cover

Ⓑ Protective cover for battery positive terminal

3. Connect the booster cables in the following order.



Ⓐ Positive terminal of the discharged vehicle battery ⊕

Ⓑ Positive terminal of the rescue vehicle battery ⊕

- Ⓒ Negative terminal of the rescue vehicle battery ⊖
- Ⓓ Negative terminal of the discharged vehicle battery ⊖

4. Recharge the battery.

Start the rescue vehicle and keep it for about 5 minutes to temporarily charge the undervoltage battery of the vehicle.

5. Start the discharged vehicle.

If the vehicle still cannot be started, check whether the jumper cables are connected correctly, and then charge the battery again.

6. Remove the jumper cables.

Once the vehicle is started, remove the jumper cables in an order contrary to the connection.

⚠ WARNING

- › During charging or jump starting, gas may escape from the battery. There is a risk of explosion at this time. Keep the battery away from sparks, open flames and other flammable materials.
- › Battery fluid is corrosive, and it can cause serious injury to eyes and skin. In case of accidental contact, please rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.
- › When connecting or removing jumper cables, you cannot wind the cables with fans, belts and the like.

- › Ensure that all cables are connected correctly, and keep a certain distance between their ends to avoid contact between positive and negative poles.

⚠ CAUTION

If a battery is often lack of electricity, please get to authorised service centre for inspections.

Jumper start method (HEV models)

If you are unable to start the vehicle with depleted battery, you can jump to the battery of another vehicle to start the vehicle.

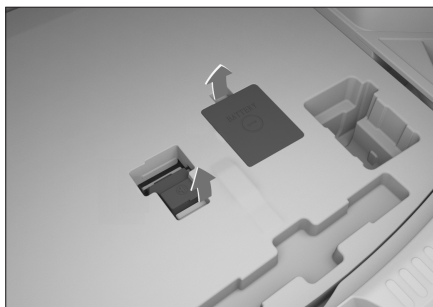
The wire cross-section of jumper cables should be no less than 25 mm².

⚠ CAUTION

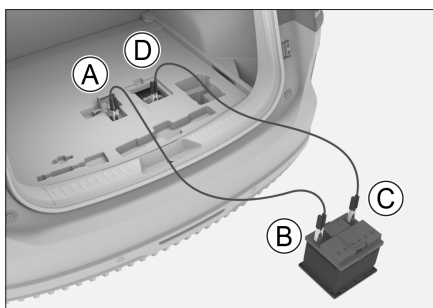
- › Not all vehicle batteries can be used. The jump start can only be performed with a battery having a rated voltage of 12 V.
- › Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.

Jump start

1. After taking out the luggage area cover plate, open the protective covers for the positive and negative terminals of the battery.



2. Connect the booster cables in the following order.



- Ⓐ Positive terminal of the discharged vehicle battery ⊕

Ⓑ Positive terminal of the rescue vehicle battery ⊕

Ⓒ Negative terminal of the rescue vehicle battery ⊖

Ⓓ Negative terminal of the discharged vehicle battery ⊖
3. Recharge the battery.

Start the rescue vehicle, increase the engine speed slightly, and keep such speed for about 5 minutes to temporarily charge the discharged battery.

4. Start the discharged vehicle.

If the vehicle still cannot be started, check whether the jumper cables are connected correctly, and then charge the battery again.

5. Remove the jumper cables.

Once the vehicle is started, remove the jumper cables in an order contrary to the connection.

⚠ WARNING

- › During charging or jump starting, gas may escape from the battery. There is a risk of explosion at this time. Keep the battery away from sparks, open flames and other flammable materials.
- › Battery fluid is corrosive, and it can cause serious injury to eyes and skin. In case of accidental contact, please rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.
- › When connecting or removing jumper cables, you cannot wind the cables with fans, belts and the like.
- › Ensure that all cables are connected correctly, and keep a certain distance between their ends to avoid contact between positive and negative poles.

Jump start

CAUTION

If a battery is often lack of electricity,
please get to authorised service centre
for inspections.

Engine overheating

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Engine overheating

NOTICE

Under extreme conditions (dragging, towing, climbing, overloading, etc.), the engine may overheat and the power of the whole vehicle will decrease.

Overheating symptoms

- › The water temperature indicator is in the red zone.
- › The instrument cluster displays alarm information and sound reminders.
- › Engine accelerates weakly.
- › There is steam emanating from the bonnet.
- › The A/C compressor may stop working automatically.

Handling methods

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place, turn off the A/C system and then shut down the engine.

2. Check whether there is steam coming from the bonnet.
 - › If there is no steam, you can open the bonnet.
 - › If there is steam, wait until there is no more steam, then open the bonnet.
3. Check the coolant level.
 - › Add coolant if the coolant level is too low.
 - › Check for pipeline leakage; if there is any leakage, contact the authorised service centre.
4. Check whether there is any foreign object in the core of the radiator.

If there is any foreign object, remove it.
5. Start the vehicle and check whether the cooling fan is running. (Confirm if the fan is running by checking the sound and air flow.)
 - › If the fan is not working, shut down the engine and contact the authorised service centre.
 - › If the fan is working normally, please head to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection.

WARNING

- › Do not open the bonnet immediately if you see steam emanating from the bonnet. Doing so may cause serious injury such as burns.

Engine overheating

- › When the temperature of radiator is high, do not open the radiator cap or the overflow tank lid. Otherwise, exiting steam or coolant may cause severe injuries such as burns.
- › When opening the cover of the overflow tank, do not touch or get close to the fan and belt. Also, open the cover slowly after covering it with a piece of cloth.
- › When the engine is running, do not touch or get close to the fan and belt. Otherwise, there is a risk of your hands or clothing becoming caught within and of severe injury as a result.
- › Do not add coolant when the engine is overheated. If coolant is suddenly added, it is easy to damage the engine. Add coolant after the engine is completely cooled down.

CAUTION

If the water temperature indicator comes to the red warning range again during driving, head to your nearest authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible.

Towing

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

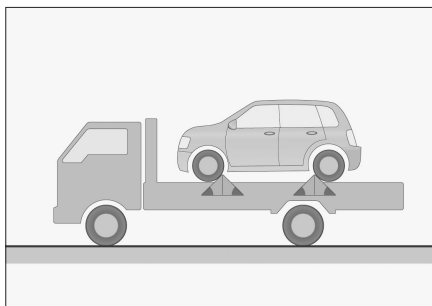
Using a professional vehicle to tow

⚠ WARNING

You must obey the relevant local laws and regulations when towing.

When the vehicle needs to be towed, we suggest a lift truck or a flatbed truck, and you should entrust the authorised service centre or a specialized towing company with the traction.

Towing with the flatbed truck

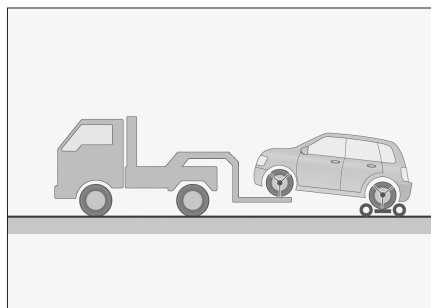


04FD77FA04F8

When using a flatbed truck, lock the vehicle firmly.

Towing with the lift truck

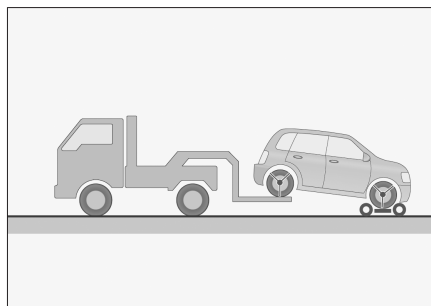
Towing from the front



0AF8FFF4F031

Place the tow truck under the rear wheel and lock firmly.

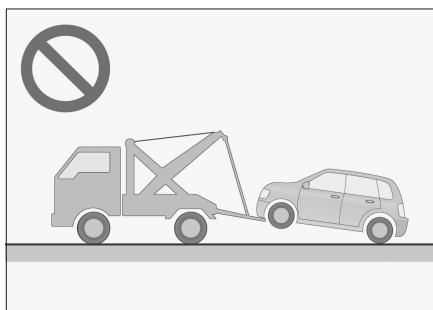
Towing from the rear



FFEE0CD03B9B

Place the tow truck under the front wheel and lock firmly.

Towing with the hoisting type truck is prohibited



9104EBEC04BC

Do not use a hoisting type truck for towing; otherwise, it may damage the vehicle body.

⚠ CAUTION

For a 4WD or RWD vehicle, please use a flatbed truck or a tow truck during towing. Towing with two wheels on the ground is forbidden; otherwise, the vehicle will be seriously damaged.

Pushing the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Do not push the vehicle over a long distance downhill to coast.

In order to let the vehicle far away from danger area, you can push the vehicle no more than 50 m with the maximum speed no more than 5 km/h.

It should meet the following conditions when pushing the vehicle:

1. Start the vehicle and shift to the N gear position.

If the vehicle will not start, switch the power supply mode to ON and shift the gear to the N gear position.

2. Turn on the hazard warning lights and release the parking brake to push the vehicle.

Towing other faulty vehicles

1. When towing, turn on the hazard warning lights and follow relevant local laws and regulations.
2. Start off slowly until the tow rope tightens, and then accelerate carefully.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not tow a vehicle heavier than your vehicle, as this may damage the vehicle.
- › Avoid sudden starting off or unstable driving operations to prevent excessive tension acting on the tow hook and the tow rope.
- › Do not use the tow rope to tow the vehicle over a long distance downhill.
- › Do not tow the vehicle backwards.

Towing with the tow hook

⚠ WARNING

You must obey the relevant local laws and regulations when towing.

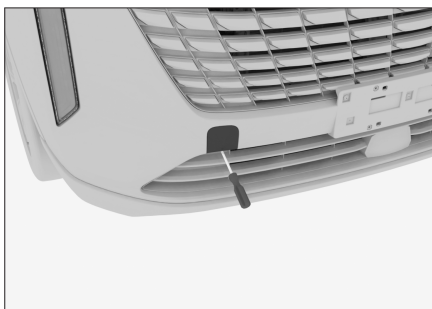
Towing

In case of emergency, if you cannot use a professional vehicle to tow your vehicle, you can use a tow hook to tow the vehicle temporarily. This towing method can only be used to tow a vehicle on hard pavement in a short distance at low speed.

When using tow hooks, the driver must sit in the vehicle and operate the steering wheel and brake pedal, with the wheels, axles, steering system, brake system, transmission system (transmission, etc.) and lighting system (turn signal light and brake light) in good condition.

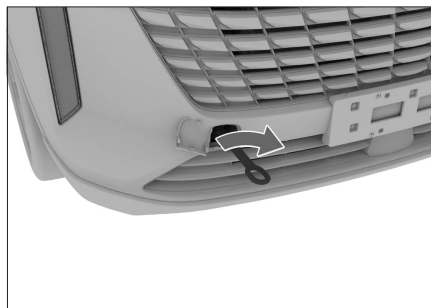
The specific towing steps are as follows:

1. Open the tow hook cover.



At the gap of the tow hook cover, use a flat-headed screwdriver or similar tool wrapped in cloth to pry off the cover.

2. Screw the tow hook clockwise into the hole and tighten it to ensure that it is securely installed.



3. Attach the tow rope to the tow hook, taking care not to damage the body. The distance between the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle should be more than 4 m and less than 10 m.

Attach a piece of white cloth (0.3 m x 0.3 m above) in the middle of the tow rope.

CAUTION

Do not use a steel rope for towing, as this may damage the bumper.

4. Start the vehicle and shift to the N gear position.

CAUTION

When you cannot shift the transmission to the N gear position, do not use a tow hook for towing.

5. Turn on the hazard warning lights, release the parking brake and wait for towing.

The towing speed is not greater than 12 km/h, and the towing distance is not greater than 25 km.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle requires a traction due to an accident, entrust a authorised service centre as far as possible. Do not use tow hooks for towing, as this may damage the tow hook and suspension components.

⚠ CAUTION

- › If the vehicle is not started, the assist system will not work, and the steering and braking operations will be difficult. The vehicle speed should be reduced as much as possible during towing.
- › During the towing process, pay attention to the brake lights of the vehicle ahead to avoid the tow rope become slack.
- › Do not use the tow rope to tow the vehicle over a long distance downhill.
- › Do not tow the vehicle backwards.

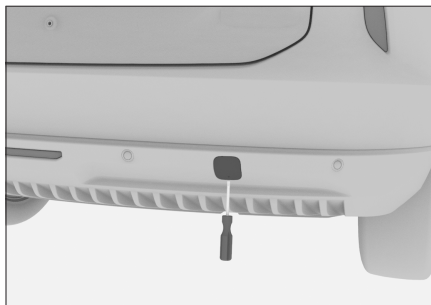
Towing a faulty vehicle

⚠ WARNING

You must obey the relevant local laws and regulations when towing.

The specific towing steps are as follows:

1. Open the tow hook cover.



58BACF6D1312

At the gap of the tow hook cover, use a flat-headed screwdriver or similar tool wrapped in cloth to pry off the cover.

2. Screw the tow hook clockwise into the hole and tighten it to ensure that it is securely installed.



50E346432F72

3. Attach the tow rope to the tow hook, taking care not to damage the body. The distance between the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle should be more than 4 m and less than 10 m.

Attach a piece of white cloth (0.3 m x 0.3 m above) in the middle of the tow rope.

Towing

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use a steel rope for towing, as this may damage the bumper.

4. Turn on the hazard warning lights, start the vehicle, and start towing.

⚠ CAUTION

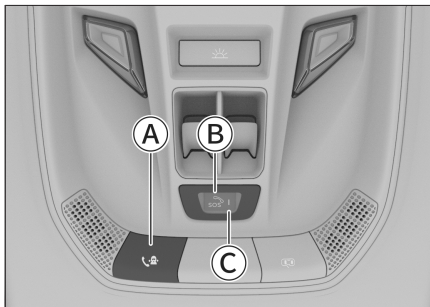
- › Do not tow a vehicle heavier than your vehicle, as this may damage the vehicle.
- › Avoid sudden start or unstable driving operation. Otherwise, the tow hook or the tow rope will be subject to too much tension.
- › Do not use the tow rope to tow the vehicle over a long distance downhill.
- › Do not tow the vehicle backwards.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Emergency rescue system

You can manually activate the emergency rescue system, or the vehicle will automatically trigger an emergency rescue to the call centre to request help and rescue in the event of a personal injury accident or other emergencies.



- (A) Fault rescue button (🚗☎)
- (B) Manual emergency rescue button (SOS)
- (C) Working state indicator light

i NOTICE

- › This communication device conforms to the standards or technical requirements of NBTC.
- › The electromagnetic field intensity of this communication device conforms to *Safety Standard for People to Use Communication Device Healthily* published by National Telecommunications Commission.

Fault rescue

Manually press the button 🚗☎ for 0.5 to 10 seconds and then release it to trigger the fault rescue; through fault rescue, you can consult about internet of vehicle issues, road rescue, and more. During the call, manually press the fault rescue button 🚗☎ for 0.5 to 10 seconds and then release it to end the fault rescue call.

⚠ CAUTION

When manually pressing the button 🚗☎ to make a call, hold the button within 0.5 to 10 seconds. Pressing the button too short or too long cannot trigger the call.



When you need assistance, please first perform the following actions:

- › Please park the vehicle in a safe area and turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Ensure your safety first, wear a reflective vest, and then place a warning triangle behind the vehicle.


Service and rescue

- › All passengers should move to a safe area and not remain inside the vehicle.
- › You can contact the rescue centre through the above methods.


Manual emergency rescue

Manually press the button  and hold it for 0.5 to 10 seconds. Release it to activate the emergency rescue call, which automatically sends vehicle status information (location, time, vehicle data, etc.) related to the rescue service to the rescue centre, and the multimedia display screen will expand the call interface. During the call, if you manually press the button  for 0.5 to 10 seconds and then release it, you can end the emergency rescue call. The rescue centre needs to provide rescue services in time according to the status information and call conditions uploaded by the vehicle.

CAUTION

When manually pressing the button  to make a call, hold the button within 0.5 to 10 seconds. Pressing the button too short or too long cannot trigger the call.

NOTICE

The button  should only be used in emergency situations, such as personal injury accidents, medical emergencies, or cases where passengers are under threat.

WARNING

Press the cover to open it, and you can manually operate the emergency rescue button. When you do not need to operate the emergency rescue button, please close the cover.

Auto emergency rescue

When the collision occurs (the airbags deploy), an emergency rescue call will automatically trigger. The system automatically send the vehicle status information (location, time, vehicle data, etc.) related to the rescue service to the rescue centre. The multimedia display screen will expand the call interface. You cannot manually stop it when calling. Only the rescue centre has the authority to end the call. After the emergency rescue call is triggered, the rescue centre will accept the rescue request of the vehicle as soon as possible.

NOTICE

- › Avoid to trigger the emergency rescue call arbitrarily and frequently.
- › After completing the emergency call, the rescue centre will call back to the vehicle in an emergency and answer it automatically.

- › The auto emergency call function is not triggered by every accident. When you can manually make an emergency call, do not wait for the system to trigger the automatic call. You should manually make a call to the rescue centre immediately to avoid delaying the response time.
- › The emergency rescue call will not be activated under the condition of weak signal of mobile network (mobile signal), disturbance, hide and so on.
- › When the GPS device is damaged or in weak signal area (such as underground garage, tunnel or mountain area), the vehicle position cannot be located.

CAUTION

Under the influence of many factors, the emergency rescue call will not work in following situations (including but not limited to):

- › If the IOV system is failed or damaged, the emergency rescue call will not be activated.
- › When the audio devices are damaged, and the wiring harness connecting the IOV system and audio device is damaged or falsely connected, it will be impossible to make a normal rescue call with customer service.
- › If the airbags do not deploy in a minor collision or other abnormal situations, the system automatically cannot activate the rescue. In this case, make an emergency rescue call manually or by other means.
- › The emergency rescue call will not be manually activated if the emergency rescue button is damaged.
- › After the vehicle is powered off, the emergency help call will not be activated.
- › The emergency rescue call cannot be used due to force majeure factors such as riot, fire, flood, storm, explosion, war, government action, judicial administrative department command, and social environment.
- › Emergency rescue service is not available due to viruses, Trojan horses or other malicious programs contained in other software you have downloaded and installed or other websites you have visited that threaten the security of your device and data.
- › Other objective factors lead to the unavailability of emergency rescue calls.

IOV (Internet Of Vehicles) function indicator light

Indicator light state	State description
OFF	System in the sleep state, or vehicle power supply in OFF mode

Service and rescue

Indicator light state	State description
Orange light always on	The system is restarting, such as starting the vehicle or reconnecting after disconnecting the battery.
Green light always on	The system is working properly.
Green light flashing	The system is in a call state.
Red light always on	The system fails in self-test and is in an error state.

WARNING

Do not attempt to modify the IOV system.

NOTICE

For daily use, please observe the following recommendations:

- › Regularly check whether the IOV system is running normally. A green IOV indicator light indicates that the system is normal. If there is a breakdown, please go to the service station for inspection and repair in time.
- › It is recommended to replace the built-in battery of the IOV device every 3 years at the longest. Please go to the service station to replace the battery in time.

6

Maintenance

Necessity of vehicle maintenance.....	272
Engine compartment	273
Safety labels and signs.....	280
Part replacement.....	285
Vehicle maintenance.....	290

Necessity of vehicle maintenance

Vehicle maintenance, a health diagnosis of the vehicle, can reduce the trouble of repairing the vehicle.

When the vehicle is in use, its components and parts will inevitably wear out. To ensure safe driving conditions, regular inspections, maintenance, and repairs are required to maintain and restore vehicle performance.

Vehicle maintenance making you drive more safely

During the maintenance, you can carry out necessary preventive maintenance according to the use of the components and parts, so that you can safely drive the vehicle before the next maintenance.

Extending the service life of the vehicle and reducing the use cost of the vehicle

Components and parts such as brake linings and tyres, etc. cannot be used permanently, as they will gradually wear out while in use. Use of components and parts that exceed the wear limit is likely to cause vehicle breakdown and even lead to traffic accidents. Therefore, it is necessary to conduct regular maintenance.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety tips

WARNING

- › The engine compartment is a hazardous area for operation and must be handled with extreme caution!
- › To avoid personal injury, do not touch high-voltage components, cables and connectors.
- › Never carry out relevant inspection work when the vehicle is started, because rotating parts (such as radiator fans), high-voltage components, power systems, etc. may lead to other dangers.
- › When performing oils inspection and filling operations, observe the following requirements; otherwise burns or fire may occur:

The vehicle is shut down.

The parking brake is applied.

Let the engine and the drive motor cool completely.

Keep children away from the engine compartment.

Do not splash oils on the engine.

Do not allow water to come into contact with the engine compartment.

- › When performing operations related to the fuel system, observe the following precautions; otherwise fire may occur:

Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.

Do not smoke.

Do not operate near open flames.

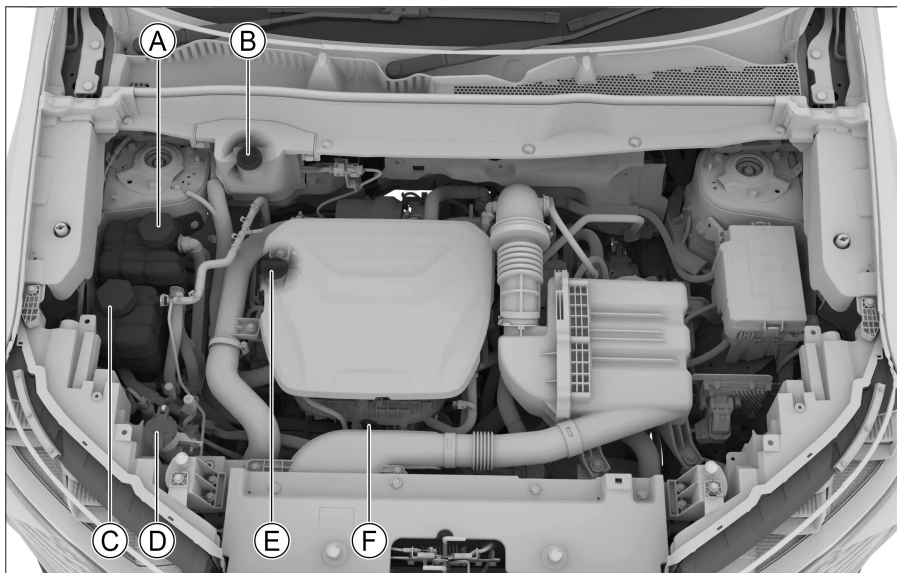
CAUTION

When adding oils, be careful not to misuse them. Otherwise, serious functional defects or damages to vehicle parts may be caused.

Engine compartment

Fluid level

Vehicles equipped with GW4B15D engines (PHEV models)



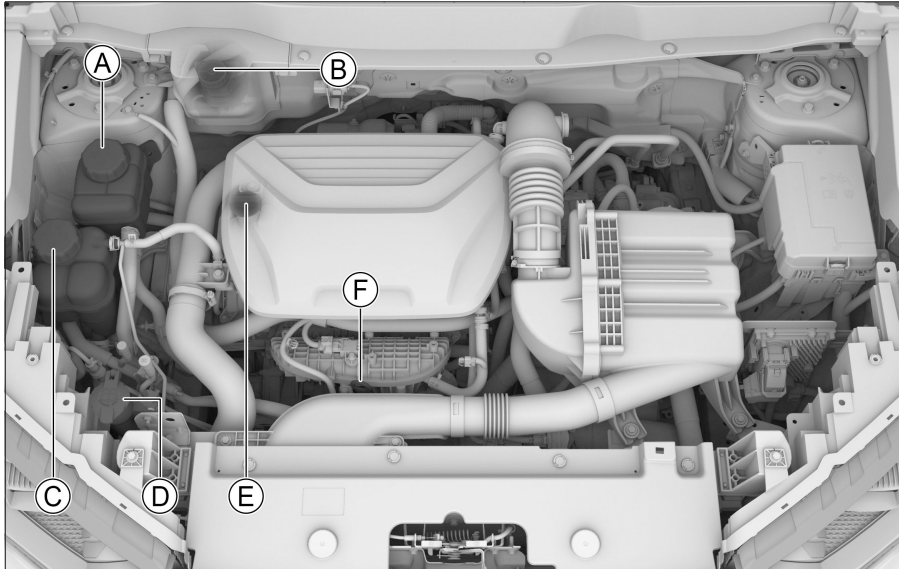
D1720A0E8BA0

- Ⓐ Overflow tank of drive motor coolant
- Ⓑ Brake fluid reservoir
- Ⓒ Engine coolant overflow tank
- Ⓓ Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
- Ⓔ Engine oil filler cap
- Ⓕ Engine oil dipstick

Engine compartment

Fluid level

Vehicles equipped with GW4B15D engines (HEV models)



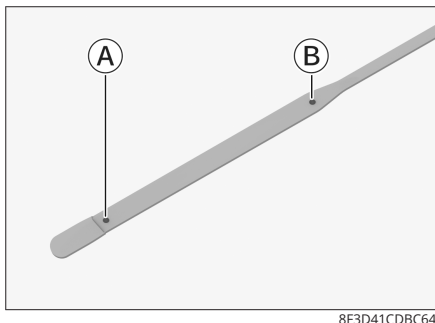
AE79EE2570B7

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Ⓐ Overflow tank of drive motor coolant | Ⓓ Windscreen washer fluid reservoir |
| Ⓑ Brake fluid reservoir | Ⓔ Engine oil filler cap |
| Ⓒ Engine coolant overflow tank | Ⓕ Engine oil dipstick |

Engine compartment

Engine oil

Check



8F3D41CDBC64

Ⓐ Minimum

Ⓑ Maximum

Stop the vehicle on flat ground and warm up the engine to normal water temperature. Then, switch the power mode to OFF mode, and pull out the engine oil dipstick and clean it out after 10 minutes. After that, fully insert the oil dipstick to the oil dipstick conduit; finally pull out the oil dipstick and check the oil level after 10 s.

The oil level should be between the maximum and minimum levels marked on the oil dipstick.

If the engine oil level is close to or lower than the minimum level marked, top up engine oil until it is at the level between the maximum and minimum levels marked.

i NOTICE

The actual size and shape of the oil dipstick vary from engine model.

⚠ WARNING

- › When the engine is running, if you close contact with rotating parts such as the strap or fan, your hands, clothing, tools and so on, may be trapped into the rotating parts, resulting in severe consequences.
- › Care should be taken to prevent burns when checking or filling engine oil.
- › Keep the engine oil in a safe place when it is not in use. If the engine oil leaks into the ground or floats on the water surface, environment will be polluted.

Filling

Open the engine oil filler cap, and slowly pour the oil so as to avoid oil spill. Any oil overflow must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled oil may cause damage to the compartment components.

Engine oil plays an important role in ensuring engine performance and longevity. Therefore, it is important to use high-quality, purified oil. Please use only engine oil that meets specifications so as to ensure the vehicle performance.

Engine compartment

Oil additives

Your vehicle does not require any oil additives, as additives cannot improve the performance and durability of the engine but product chemical reacts with engine oil causing oil invalid and damaging engine.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Therefore, check and replace engine oil on a regular basis. Otherwise, insufficient oil levels or deteriorated engine oil may cause poor lubrication of engine rotation parts, thereby cause sintering and hence damage to the engine.
- › The engine oil works to lubricate and cool. Oil levels go down over time even if you are driving normally, as a certain amount of engine oil in the lubricant piston and valve also ends up being spent in combustion chamber. Engine oil levels may go down depending on your specific drive conditions.
- › Take care not to exceed marked maximum levels when topping up engine oil.

Brake fluid

Check

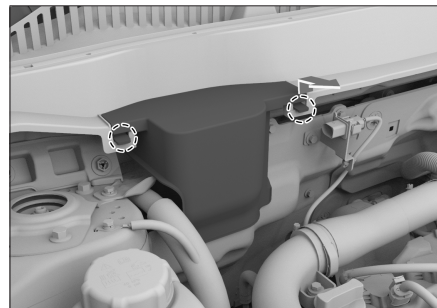
Regularly check the fluid level in the reservoir.

Check whether the fluid level in the reservoir is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the brake fluid level is lower than the minimum level marked, add new brake fluid until the fluid level is between the maximum and minimum levels marked. Also make sure that the braking system shows no signs of leakage.

Filling

1. Remove the cover plate by pulling its two pawls as shown in the figure.



C3CC71985C25

2. Remove the cover plate, and you can see the brake fluid reservoir.



19EC43709C6B

3. Pry open the reservoir cover. Pour in the fluid slowly to prevent overflow. Any fluid overflow must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled fluid may cause damage to the engine compartment components.

Engine compartment

Only use brake fluid that meets specifications.

4. After filling, reinstall the reservoir cover and cover plate.

WARNING

- › Insufficient brake fluid levels can compromise brake performance and increase the risk of an accident.
- › Brake fluid is harmful to the human body and corrosive. In case of accidental contact, rinse it immediately with plenty of water. If you ingest it, go to a hospital immediately.

Engine/electric drive system coolant

Check

The fluid level in the overflow tank should be checked regularly.

Check whether the fluid level in the overflow tank is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the coolant level is lower than the minimum level marked, add coolant until the coolant level is between the maximum and minimum levels marked. Also make sure that the cooling system shows no signs of leakage.

Filling

When the engine and electric drive system cool down, slowly open the lid to let the pressure out.

If the coolant spills, clean it up immediately to prevent parts or paint from being damaged.

Use only the coolant that meets the specifications.

WARNING

- › Never open the overflow tank cover when the engine compartment is at high temperature. There may still be some pressure inside the cooling system. Opening it at this point may cause burns or other injuries when heated coolant spurts out.

CAUTION

- › The coolant contains ethylene glycol to lower its freezing point. Indiscriminate disposal may lead to water pollution.
- › When changing the engine/electric drive system coolant, contact the authorised service centre.

Windscreen washer fluid

Filling

Open the tank cover. Pour in washer fluid slowly to prevent overflow. Any washer fluid overflow must be removed immediately.

You should use quality washer fluid for better cleaning capabilities and for anti-freeze protection in cold season.

Engine compartment

NOTICE

You should use the detergent with enough anti-freeze performance, if the ambient temperature is lower than 0 °C. The detergent should be placed out of the reach of children to avoid accidental ingestion.

The detergent is flammable and should be stored far from fire.

CAUTION

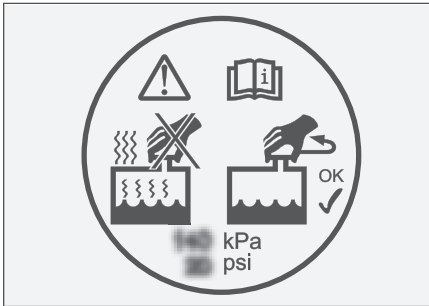
Please do not top up liquids such as soapy water into the tank in place of the detergent. Otherwise, the paint on vehicle body may be damaged.

WARNING

Do not top up washing fluid when the engine is at a high temperature, or when the engine is running. This is because the washing fluid contains alcohol. Spilling the fluid on the engine carries a risk of fire.

Safety labels and signs

Engine coolant warning label



7292828C8D61

The identifier is located on the overflow tank of the engine coolant. It serves to remind you to refrain from opening the overflow tank cover when the engine and the radiator are overheated. Otherwise, the hot liquid and steam be forced out under system pressure, causing burns.

High-voltage warning signs

⚠ WARNING

- › Only professionals should operate the parts of the vehicle with high-voltage warning signs.
- › Any person must not use fingers, tools, decorations or other metal objects to approach or touch the parts where the high-voltage warning signs are pasted.
- › The gas leaked or escaped from the traction battery pack may be toxic or flammable. Stay away from the vehicle in the event of an accident to avoid personal injury or even death.

High-voltage signs



C40E90CFEA3D

These signs are located on high-voltage parts to remind you of the following:

- › There is high voltage inside these parts.
- › Never remove, repair or replace the part without authorization, and pay attention to the relevant matters.
- › Do not touch high-voltage parts, otherwise, there may be a risk of electric shock.

Safety labels and signs

Drive motor coolant warning label



The label is located on the overflow tank of the drive motor coolant. It serves to remind you to refrain from opening the overflow tank cover when the drive motor is overheated. Otherwise, the hot liquid and steam will be forced out under system pressure, causing burns.

Engine compartment warning label

Type I



Type II



This label is located on the engine compartment front cover plate or the front grille trim plate to remind you of the following:

- › The type and filling amount of A/C refrigerant;
- › The cooling fan may be started at any time. Do not put your hand into the fan shield. Otherwise, when the fan is started unexpectedly, serious personal injury may be caused.

Battery warning label

Type I



6

Maintenance

Safety labels and signs

Type II



A86516835B47

Type III



378F054B09F7

This label is located on the battery to inform you of the following precautions before installing, removing, or inspecting the battery:

- › Children should be kept away from the battery.
- › The battery may produce flammable gases in the use or charging process, so it should be away from high-temperature heat source and open flame. Otherwise a fire or explosion is likely to occur.
- › The battery contains corrosive liquid.
- › Take necessary protective measures such as wearing goggles during operation.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

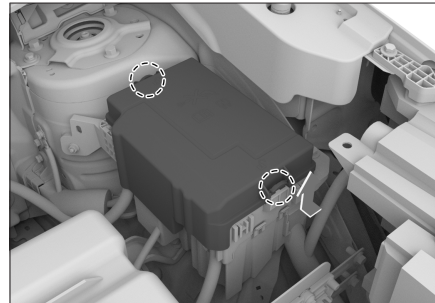
Fuses

If any electrical components do not work, the fuses may have been blown out. In this case, carry out the inspections based on the following operations and replace the fuses if necessary:

1. Turn off all electrical components.
2. Set the power supply mode to OFF, apply the parking brake, and disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.
3. The fuses are located in the following positions:

> Located in the fuse box of the engine

compartment



CEEDBD0AFCE8

Press and hold the two pawls on the fuse box cover, and then pull up the fuse box cover to open the fuse box.

> Located in the instrument panel near the steering wheel



37BB8DB6C6EE

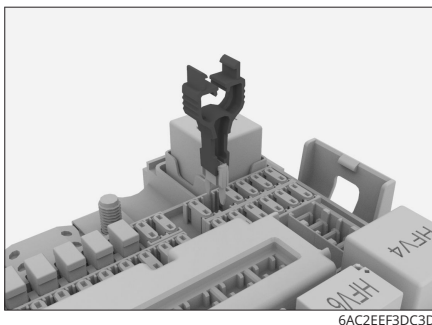
Remove the box cover and you can see it.

⚠ CAUTION

- > Keep water and other liquids away from the fuse box to avoid damaging the electrical components.
- > Install the fuse box cover on the fuse box correctly. Otherwise, penetration of moisture or dirt will affect the use of fuses.

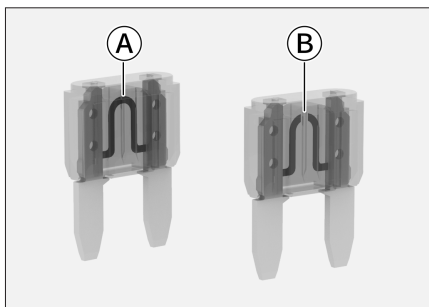
Part replacement

4. Use the fuse puller in the vehicle to pull out the fuses. Find the fuse of the faulty electrical appliance according to the fuse label and check it.



⚠ CAUTION

- › The fuse puller and the spare fuse are located in the cover of the engine compartment fuse box.
 - › The engine compartment fuse box and the instrument panel fuse box are attached with fuse labels. With these labels, the relationship between fuses and electrical components can be determined.
 - › Since there may be more than one fuse causing the breakdown, check all the fuses that may cause the breakdown before the breakdown disappears. If the breakdown cannot be eliminated in the end, contact the authorised service centre for handling.
5. Check the wire inside the fuse. If it is blown out, replace it with a spare fuse of the same amperage.



Ⓐ Normal fuse

Ⓑ Blown fuse

⚠ WARNING

For blown fuses, do not try to repair or replace them with fuses of inconsistent colours or amperages; otherwise, a fire will occur due to cable overload.

6. Check whether the electrical components return to normal operation.

⚠ CAUTION

If a spare fuse of the same amperage is blown again in a short time or the electrical components do not return to normal operation, it indicates that the vehicle may have a serious electrical system breakdown. In this case, contact the authorised service centre for assistance duly.

Replacing the front wiper blade

Periodically check the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blade immediately if you find the following conditions:

Part replacement

- › Cracks or hardened areas are found on wiper blades.
- › Streaks or dirt are left after using the wiper.

⚠ CAUTION

When lifting and putting back the wiper, do not pull the wiper blade directly to avoid deformation or even damage.

1. Switch the power supply to OFF mode, press the front windscreen washer switch, and hold it for about 3 seconds, the wiper will automatically reach the service position, as shown in the figure.



F496C9DD86A4

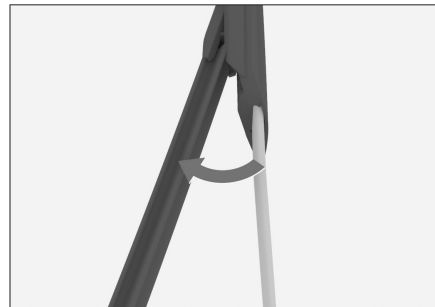
2. Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen.

⚠ CAUTION

- › To lift the wiper, be sure to bring the wiper to the maintenance position. Otherwise, the wiper will be damaged.
- › Do not open the bonnet while the wiper is lifted. Otherwise, the bonnet and the wiper will be damaged.

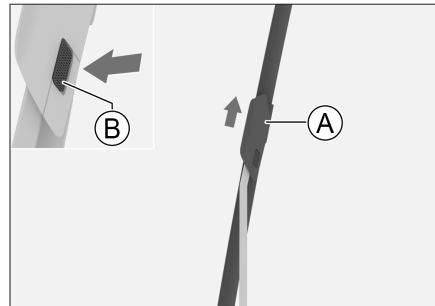
- › Do not use the maintenance gear to lift the wiper arm in low temperature or icy/snowy weather to avoid damaging the wiper blades due to power supply mode switching and wiper return.

3. Rotate the wiper blade in the direction indicated to maximize the angle between it and the plastic connector.



15E146B9A476

4. Take out the wiper blade from the wiper arm.



3870D48F103F

Ⓐ Wiper blade

Ⓑ Locking tab

Press down the locking tab and pull the wiper blade in the direction indicated at the same time until it separates from the wiper arm.

Part replacement

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damaging the windscreen, never place the wiper arm directly on it when the wiper blade is not installed.

5. Install a new wiper blade and return the wiper back onto the windscreen.

For easy installation, please refer to step 3 to maximise the included angle between the wiper blade and the plastic connector.

After installation, move the wiper up and down to ensure that it is installed in place.

6. Reset the wiper to the initial state.

The wiper automatically resets to the initial state when the power supply is set to ON mode or the vehicle is started.

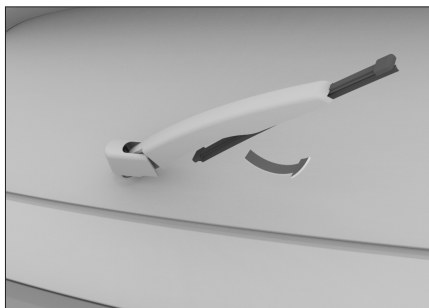
Rear wiper blade replacement

1. Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen.

⚠ CAUTION

The rear wiper arm has a limited lift angle of about 45°. Do not over lift or use excessive force when lifting up. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage.

2. Pull the wiper blade in the direction shown until the blade is free of the wiper arm.



67255DED83DC

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damaging the windscreen, never place the wiper arm directly on it when the wiper blade is not installed.

3. Install a new wiper blade and return the wiper back to the windscreen.

Light maintenance

Light calibration

The front combination lights on a new vehicle have been calibrated at the factory. If you often carry heavy items in the vehicle, the front combination lights may need to be recalibrated. The calibration of the front combination lights should be done at the authorised service centre.

Replacing bulbs

All exterior lights are LED sources, which cannot be removed or replaced individually. In case of any issues such as damage to the light source or malfunction, it is recommended that you go to the authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

WARNING

- › Do not modify external lighting and signalling devices.
- › Do not add external lighting and signalling devices which are not specified in the compulsory standards.

About lights fogged

Under conditions such as driving or washing vehicle on a rainy day, there may be fog inside the light cover. This is caused by the temperature difference between the inner and outer air of the lights and it is the same phenomenon as the window glass fogging on rainy days. It doesn't mean any problem in function. However, when a significant amount of water or water vapour accumulates inside the light cover, please contact the authorised service centre for assistance.

CAUTION

Do not use chemical solvents or strong cleaning agents to scrub the external light cover to avoid damage to the external light cover.

Vehicle maintenance

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyre maintenance

To ensure safe driving, make sure that the tyres used suit your vehicle in their models and sizes with a good tread pattern and appropriate tyre pressure.

WARNING

- › Do not use tyres that are excessively worn, damaged, under-inflated, or over-inflated, as this can lead to accidents and personal injury.
- › You must abide by all manual instructions regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.
- › Burning tyres by individuals produces toxic gases. Please handle it properly.

Tyre check

When checking the tyre inflation state, you should also check whether there is external damage, foreign objects or excessive wear, etc.

If any of the following circumstances are found, replace the tyre as soon as possible:

- › There is damage and bulges on the tyre tread or sides.
- › There is excessive wear to the tyre tread.

Tyre pressure

Maintaining appropriate tyre pressure levels can maximize vehicle handling ability, tyre tread life and driving comfort.

Uneven wear of under-inflated tyres also impacts the handling of the vehicle and driving economy, and may cause tyres to go flat due to overheating.

Over-inflated tyres can lead to an uncomfortable ride as well as damage to the tyre due to uneven road surfaces, as well as uneven wear to the tyres.

It is recommended that you check the tyre pressure regularly, .

Tyre pressure should be measured when the tyre is cold. The measurement conducted when the vehicle is parked for more than 3 hours or its driving distance is not more than 1.5 km will get more accurate data. If you check the tyre pressure when the tyre is hot (after driving for a few kilometres), the pressure reading will be 30 to 40 kPa higher than the cold-state reading. This is normal. Do not deflate the tyre to reach the prescribed cold-state pressure as this will lead to insufficient tyre pressure.

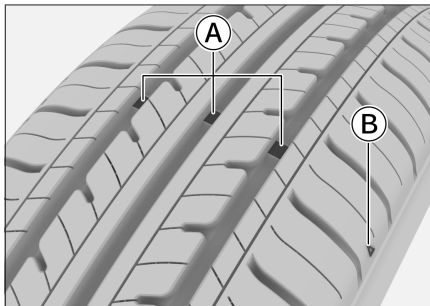
i NOTICE

Even if the tyres are in good condition, the tyre pressure may drop by 10 to 20 kPa every month. Please check them regularly.

Improving economy by ECO tyre pressure

Adjusting the tyre pressure to ECO levels (as indicated on the tyre pressure label, if available) can improve energy efficiency. However, this may reduce riding comfort. Adjust the pressure based on your personal needs.

Tyre wear



Ⓐ Tyre wear mark

Ⓑ Tyre wear mark position figure

i NOTICE

The tyre wear mark position figure is a schematic diagram, which is used for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

You must replace tyres as soon as possible once they have been worn down to the maximum tolerable limit.

If you continue to use tyres with shallow treads or where the tyre wear mark has exposed, this will lead to situations such as longer braking distances, failure in steering and cracked tyres and possibly accidents.

If you find tyre wear uneven, or feel a certain continuous vibration when driving, go to the authorised service centre for inspection.

When installing new tyres, perform dynamic tyre balance to ensure ride comfort and to prolong tyre use life.

Tyre rotation

To extend the lifespan of your tyres and ensure even wear, it is recommended to check tyre pressure and wear at least once a month. If the tread depth difference is 1.5 mm or more, a tyre rotation is necessary.

The tyre rotation should be done by the professionals and it is recommended to be done by the authorised service centre.

Vehicle maintenance

Wheel balance

Unbalanced wheels can affect vehicle control performance and tyre service life. Even under the normal use conditions, the wheels may lose their balance. Therefore, the wheels should be balanced according to the wheel dynamic balance parameters.

Avoiding tyre flatness

If the vehicle is parked in a high temperature environment for an extended period, the tyres may experience slight deformation at the contact points with the ground. This is known as "tyre flatness" and is considered normal. However, when the vehicle is running, the vehicle body and steering wheel may shake. As the mileage increases, the tyre will get hot and return to its original shape, and the shake will gradually disappear.

When the vehicle is stationary for an extended period of time, the tyre flatness can be minimized by any of the following methods:

- › The tyre pressure can be increased (by about 300 kPa), which cannot be used for normal driving. Before driving, the tyre pressure must be restored to the recommended tyre pressure.
- › The vehicle must be moved at least once every 30 days (15 days best), and the movement must make the original force bearing point rotate at least 90°.

Replacing tyres and wheels

- › If tyres need to be replaced, new tyres should have the same specifications as the original ones, with the same or higher load index and speed rating.
- › The original tyres provided with this vehicle represent the optimal choice for handling, comfort, and economy. It is recommended that they should be replaced with original tyres at an authorized authorised service centre.
- › Tyres should be replaced in pairs (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres should be replaced simultaneously). Failure to do so may affect braking and handling performance of the vehicle.
- › If wheels need to be replaced, new wheels should have the same specifications and sizes (such as diameter and offset) as the original ones. Original wheels can be purchased at the authorised service centre.

WARNING

- › Do not mix tyres from different manufacturers, or with different models, tread patterns, or tread wear levels.
- › Do not mix tyres with different structures, such as radial and bias ply.
- › Do not mix summer, all-season and winter tyres.

- › Ensure that tyres and wheels with correct specifications and sizes are used for replacement. Unsuitable tyres or wheels installed on the vehicle will affect its handling and stability, which may lead to accidents like collisions.

Sunroof maintenance

Daily maintenance frequency

The daily maintenance frequency depends on the driving condition and the use frequency of the sunroof.

If you are driving through sandy areas or areas with high rainfall levels, it is recommended that you increase the frequency of routine maintenance.

CAUTION

If the sunroof is not maintained on schedule, it can lead to sunroof leaks or abnormal noise. Adjust maintenance frequency depending on the conditions of use. For instance, in sandy zones or during seasons when there is higher usage, increase the frequency of routine maintenance.

Routine maintenance procedure

Dust and impurities may be concentrated in the sunroof seal strip, mechanical parts or rails, which may result in an abnormal sound or malfunction of the sunroof and also clogging the drainage system. Regularly open the sunroof, remove dust and impurities, and use clean cloth and water to wipe the sunroof seal strip surface, as well as regularly apply grease on the mechanical parts for maintenance.

Open the sunroof and check whether the sunroof shows signs of being stuck in the course of operation. If yes, please head to a authorised service centre for services.

CAUTION

- › When the sunroof malfunctions, please head to a authorised service centre as soon as possible for check and maintenance.
- › In cold and icy conditions, do not force open the sunroof to avoid damaging the sunroof motor and the sunroof seal strip. The sunroof should only be opened after the temperature inside the vehicle has risen and the sunroof seal strip and the roof opening have thawed.
- › Open the sunroof after washing the vehicle in cold and icy conditions. Use a piece of soft, dry cloth to wipe dry the sunroof seal strip before driving.

Vehicle maintenance

- › The sunroof must be closed fully before the vehicle enters a car wash facility. Do not allow water jets to be pointed directly at the sunroof seal strip. Prevent the seal strip from deforming under the pressure of a high-pressure water jet. Failure to do so could lead to water entering the vehicle interior and cause damage to the seal strip.
- › When driving on bumpy roads or in hilly areas, do not open the sunroof fully for extended periods of time as the vibrations may cause damage to internal sunroof components.
- › During the rainy season, step up checks for any sand or dust on the sunroof seal strip, and remove them in a timely manner to ensure good sealing performance of the sunroof.

6

Maintenance

Battery

The vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery.

The battery is located under the luggage area cover plate.

When the battery shows low level, it is necessary to charge or replace the battery in time. Head to a authorised service centre for service if you need to replace the battery.

Protection films for new vehicles

After purchasing a new vehicle, remove the protection films in time. For example, the positions of weatherstrips, A-pillar trim plate, B-pillar trim plate, etc. outside the vehicle, and the positions of the interior handle and chrome plating trim strip in the vehicle.

i NOTICE

Due to variations in vehicle shape, design, and assembly methods, the placement of the protective film may differ from what is outlined in the manual. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for details.

Exterior maintenance

Vehicle wash

A regular vehicle wash helps to protect its appearance. Please regularly clean your vehicle.

i NOTICE

The longer such corrosive substances as insects, bird droppings, tree resins, road dust, industrial fallout, tar, soot, and snow melt salt remain on the body surface, the greater the damage to the body paint. High temperatures (for example, sun exposure) will further aggravate the corrosion effect.

To prevent damage to the vehicle paint, immediately remove corrosive substances on the body surface. Do not wait until your vehicle is due for a complete wash.

Wash your vehicle in a shady spot and not under direct sunlight. If the vehicle has been parked under direct sunlight for a long time, you must move the vehicle to a shady spot before cleaning, and wait until the body surface is cooled down.

Cleaning methods

1. Check that there are no fallen leaves, bird droppings, etc., on the vehicle body.
Remove these dirt, and then rinse immediately with clean water so as not to damage the vehicle body surface finish.
2. Wash the vehicle thoroughly with water to remove surface dust.
Clean your vehicle using water and a soft brush, a sponge, or a piece of soft cloth.
3. After washing and cleaning the vehicle, use a special leather or soft towel to dry off the vehicle. Do not allow the vehicle to dry out naturally as this may cause the vehicle body to lose its luster or generate water stains.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not use acid, strong alkaline, strong chemical cleaning agents to wash the vehicle. Prolonged soaking by strong detergents will cause serious corrosion of the body paint and bright stripes, affecting the appearance of the vehicle.
- › After washing the vehicle or driving through flooded road, depress the brake pedal lightly to make sure that the brake is functioning normally.
- › When washing the vehicle in cold season, do not flush the gaps in the keyholes or doors, etc. to prevent the lock hole or the seal strip from freezing.
- › When cleaning the vehicle, do not open the fuel tank door and charging port cover to flush its inside.
- › Before washing the vehicle, be sure to raise the windows completely and do not flush it with the high-pressure water against the glass edge. The high-pressure water flow may warp the seals, making the seals unable to prevent the water from entering the cabin.

Waxing

Waxing is conducive to vehicle maintenance, and the vehicle must be thoroughly cleaned before waxing to ensure the effect of waxing.

Vehicle maintenance

There are many types of car wax available on the market, each with different properties, so choose carefully. Using the wrong wax could cause paint discolouration rather than protecting the vehicle's body.

Under normal circumstances, you should consider the purpose and properties of the car wax, the age of the vehicle, the paint colour, and the driving environment when choosing a wax. For details, contact the authorised service centre or professionals.

Repairing paint surfaces

Always check whether there are any paint peeled off or scratches on the vehicle body surface. If such a phenomenon occurs, repair the surface immediately to prevent corrosion of the metal in the damaged area.

Repair paint can only be used to repair small areas of peeled-off paint or scratches. Large areas of peeled-off paint should be repaired by professionals.

Maintenance of matte lacquer finish

If your vehicle is equipped with matte paint, please note the following during maintenance and use of the vehicle:

- › Never use automatic vehicle washing equipment with hard brushes to clean the vehicle. Hard brushes can damage the paint surface. It is recommended to use a soft sponge, neutral cleaning agents and plenty of water to manually clean the vehicle.
- › When cleaning the body, use a gentle wiping and washing method to avoid excessive force or friction on the body; otherwise, the matte effect will be changed, and the gloss of the body will be uneven.
- › Frequent vehicle washes for a long time will cause the paint gloss to increase or uneven.
- › Avoid washing the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- › Please do not use paint cleaning agents, sanding materials, or polishing products such as polishing wax to treat the paint surface. Failure to do so will damage the paint surface.
- › If you accidentally apply the vehicle wax to the paint surface, please remove it immediately with silicone resin remover, and use gentle force to avoid excessive force during operation.
- › Avoid resin, grease and other lipids in contact with the paint, as this can leave marks.
- › Use asphalt remover to remove tar stains on the vehicle body.

- › Remove insects and bird droppings and other dirt on the body in time. Use water to soft them before cleaning, or wash them carefully with a high-pressure water gun. If this kind of dirt has firmly adhered to the body, you can spray shellac remover before cleaning.

Liquid leakage check

To ensure driving safety, it is recommended to check for fuel, oil or other liquid leaks under the vehicle before each driving. In case of the apparent leakage, contact the authorised service centre for service.

Cavity anti-corrosion wax instructions

Cavity wax injection anti-corrosion technology is applied to the inner cavities of vehicle doors, bonnets, sill beams, and other parts. This technology effectively isolates water and corrosive substances from metal, enhancing the vehicle's durability and corrosion resistance, and extending its service life.

When the vehicle is driving on a high temperature or severely bumpy road, it's normal for excess yellow waxes in the cavity to flow out through the water hole. You can use hot water plus the proper amount of commercially available cleaning agent to wipe and rinse them.

Interior maintenance

WARNING

Cleaning agents may contain harmful substances that could cause injuries. For cleaning the interior, it is recommended to open the doors or windows. Use only cleaning agents that are made for vehicle cleaning and follow the instructions on the package.

NOTICE

- › Do not allow water or any liquid come into contact with instrument panel, floor or electrical components when cleaning the interior as water will damage those components.
- › Do not clean the vehicle floor with water to avoid vehicle body corrosion.

Carpets

Regularly clean carpets with a vacuum cleaner. Allowing dirt to remain on carpets will increase wear on them.

Regularly washing carpets with detergent will keep them in better condition. Use a foaming detergent to clean carpets. To keep carpets as dry as possible, do not add water to the foaming detergent.

Textile

Regularly use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt from the textile.

Vehicle maintenance

If the textile becomes contaminated, clean it promptly to prevent the stains from spreading. Use the following methods to gently remove as much of the stains as possible, depending on its condition.

For liquid stains, gently blot the stains with a paper towel to absorb as much of the stains as possible.

For solid dry stains, first remove as much of the residue as possible, and then use a vacuum cleaner to clean up the remaining stains.

Based on the cleaning progress of the stains, please use the following methods for further cleaning:

1. Soak a clean white cotton cloth that will not shed lint with water.
2. Screw the cotton cloth to half dry (no dripping is advisable).
3. Gently scrub from the edge of the stains towards the centre until no more dirt transfers to the cotton.
4. Dry naturally.

NOTICE

For stubborn stains, use mild, neutral soapy water or a fabric-specific detergent. Be sure to follow the detergent's instructions. After cleaning, repeat the steps to rinse off any excess soapy water or detergent, and allow the fabric to dry naturally.

CAUTION

- › Avoid using sharp objects to scrape or rub surface dirt, as this may damage the fabric.
- › Do not use strong solvents such as glass cleaner.
- › Oil and other stubborn stains can be difficult to completely remove, so be sure to take precautions to protect the fabric.

Leather

Regularly use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt, especially from creases and seams.

Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with water, and then buff it up with another soft dry cloth. Use a leather cleaner for deeper cleaning.

Wipe off the leather cleaner with a soft dry cloth as soon as possible after cleaning with the leather cleaner. Do not leave a cloth with leather cleaner on any part of the interior trim for a long time. Some leather cleaners may cause the resin or fibres of the interior trim textile to discolour or break.

Do not use liquid containing organic substances like alcohol to clean leather; do not use petrol, acidic solution or alkaline solution to clean leather.

Do not use brushes, hard sponges and other tools with rough surfaces when cleaning.

Do not use silicone or gel cushions on leather surfaces, as they can cause the leather to harden and crack.

Suedette

Always use a soft brush, a piece of dry cloth or a vacuum cleaner to remove dust from the suedette surface.

If the suedette surface becomes stained, the following operating instructions should be observed:

- › Before removing the stain, first remove any matter adhering to the stain. If the stain on the surface is thick (yoghurt, jam, etc.), use a spoon or a cardboard to remove it; if it is a liquid stain, use white absorbent paper or a sponge.
- › Use a clean and dry white rag or wrung out sponge for wiping.
- › When cleaning the suedette surface, do not allow the surface to get too wet. If necessary, wash a rag or a sponge several times during wiping.
- › Remove local stains immediately. To avoid spreading the stain further, wipe the stain from its edge to its centre.
- › Do not wipe the stain hard, as this can cause it to spread or penetrate deeper into the material.
- › When using a special cleaner, do not pour the cleaner directly onto the suedette surface.

Do not use alkaline or alcoholic solvent cleaners.

- › Once the suedette has dried completely its surface can be restored to its original state by brushing it lightly with a soft brush.

Rubber parts

Exposure to the environment may cause the surface of rubber parts to become soiled and lose their shine. Rubber parts should be cleaned regularly with rubber conditioners, especially worn rubber parts.

To prevent damage and reduce noise, avoid using conditioners that contain silicone for routine maintenance of rubber seals. Instead, clean them with water or a suitable conditioner.

Plastic parts

i NOTICE

Liquids containing alcohol or solvents (nitro thinner, cooling cleaner, petroleum ether cleaners, fuel, cosmetics such as perfume and sunscreen, mosquito repellent, etc.) can damage the surface of plastic parts. Clean them with a soft microfibre cloth (slightly moistened with water).

Plastic parts include but are not limited to the following: vehicle light covers, air outlet assemblies and interior painted parts.

Vehicle maintenance

Windows

Clean the inside and outside of windows with glass cleaner and dry all glass and plastic surfaces with a soft cloth or paper towel.

CAUTION

If a heating wire is attached to the inside of the rear window, excessive wiping may cause it to move or break. Therefore, wipe lightly along the direction of the heating wire.

Seat belts

- › Use mild warm soapy water to clean soiled seat belts. Do not use bleach, dyes or cleaning solvents. Such products may reduce the durability of seat belts.

Allow seat belts to dry naturally in the air before driving.

- › Too much dust accumulated inside the seat belt guide ring will cause seat belts to retract more slowly. Scrub the inner side of the guide ring with mild warm soapy water.

Anti-corrosion measures

Factors that affect the corrosion rate

- › The accumulation of dirt, dust, or snow in the lower part of the vehicle body can accelerate corrosion.

- › Damage to the coating or other protective layer, arising from sand attacking or minor accident, may quicken corrosion.
- › If the vehicle runs in areas where relative humidity is high or temperature is above freezing point, it may quicken corrosion.
- › There is much salinity in the air and salt on the road of industrial pollution areas and coastal regions, which may quicken the paint corrosion.
- › Rising temperature may quicken the corrosion of poorly ventilated parts.

Protecting the vehicle from corrosion

- › Park the vehicle in a well-ventilated and dry place.
- › Regularly use clean cold water and neutral vehicle detergent to wash the vehicle so as to keep it clean.
- › Regularly check whether the paint is damaged. If damaged, repair it as soon as possible.
- › Regularly check the lower part of the vehicle body. If there is sand, dirt, snow, ice or other coverings, clean them with water as soon as possible.
- › Check the interior of the vehicle frequently to ensure that the carpet is dry and clean.

When transporting chemicals, cleaning agents, fertilizers, salt, etc., take special care and use appropriate containers for transportation. If splashes or leaks are found, clean them immediately and keep them dry.

- › Keep the door drain hole open so as to avoid water logging.
- › If bird droppings, resin, insect carcasses, asphalt, cement, industrial dust, coal tar, gasoline, benzene or other similar objects are accumulated on the body surface, clean them as soon as possible.
- › If you always drive on a deicing salt covered road, saline-alkali land, seaside and other roads containing salt, please wash off the attachments at the bottom of the vehicle at least once a month, and take special maintenance measures, such as chassis armour.
- › If you drive regularly on sand road, please consider installing mudguard behind the wheels.

Long-term storage of the vehicle (PHEV models)

The vehicle should be parked in a location that helps prevent its condition from deteriorating and allows for easy restarting. If possible, park your vehicle indoor.

To store the vehicle for an extended period (one month or longer), take the following steps beforehand:

- › Top up the fuel tank.
- › Clean and dry the vehicle exterior thoroughly.
- › Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure it is clean and tidy.
- › Release the parking brake, and use the wheel chock to hold against the tyres.
- › Open the vehicle windows slightly on one side (if the vehicle is parked indoors).
- › Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.
- › Place a folded towel or a piece of cloth under the wiper blade to prevent it from contacting the windscreen glass.
- › To reduce the risk of sticking, apply silicone lubricant on all door seals.
- › Use a vehicle cover made of porous cotton to cover the vehicle, because non-porous materials such as plastic will accumulate moisture, and is likely to damage the vehicle body paint.
- › The vehicle should be stored in a well-ventilated environment, without flammable and explosive materials around.
- › To prolong the service life of the traction battery, maintain the traction battery power at 40% to 60% when the vehicle is stored for more than 7 days.

Vehicle maintenance

When the vehicle is stored for more than 3 months without use, the traction battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40% to 60% every 3 months, which will prolong the service life of the traction battery.

- › Considering the characteristics of the traction battery, the ambient temperature for the vehicle should not be lower than -40°C. To keep the traction battery in good state, when the vehicle is stored for less than 3 months, less than 6 months and more than 6 months, the ambient temperature should be between -20°C and 45°C, 0°C and 45°C and 0°C and 35°C respectively.
- › Long-term storage with low battery power may cause the traction battery to over-discharge, leading to performance degradation or even damage to the traction battery.

i NOTICE

It is recommended to check the traction battery power every month. If the "low battery level indicator light" in the instrument panel turns on, charge the battery immediately.

Long-term storage of the vehicle (HEV models)

The vehicle should be parked in a location that helps prevent its condition from deteriorating and allows for easy restarting. If possible, park your vehicle indoor.

To store the vehicle for an extended period (one month or longer), take the following steps beforehand:

- › Top up the fuel tank.
- › Clean and dry the vehicle exterior thoroughly.
- › Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure it is clean and tidy.
- › Release the parking brake, and use the wheel chock to hold against the tyres.
- › Open the vehicle windows slightly on one side (if the vehicle is parked indoors).
- › Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.
- › Place a folded towel or a piece of cloth under the wiper blade to prevent it from contacting the windscreen glass.
- › To reduce the risk of sticking, apply silicone lubricant on all door seals.
- › Use a vehicle cover made of porous cotton to cover the vehicle, because non-porous materials such as plastic will accumulate moisture, and is likely to damage the vehicle body paint.

Vehicle maintenance

- › The vehicle should be stored in a well-ventilated environment, without flammable and explosive materials around.
- › If possible, the vehicle should be started once a month, and the system will automatically detect the power of the traction battery. If the traction battery level is low, the engine will automatically run into idle charging mode. When the engine stops running, charging is completed. If the traction battery level is normal, the engine will not start, and you can lock the vehicle and leave.
- › The battery system is located under the luggage area. Do not store flammable, explosive, or highly corrosive materials in the luggage area.
- › To ensure good starting performance and power, it is recommended to drive for at least 2 hours per month.



7

Technical data

Vehicle identification..... 306

Overall parameters 308

Vehicle identification

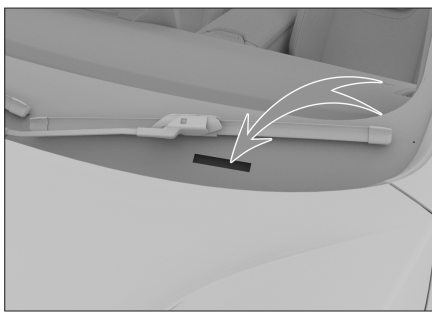
Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Vehicle identification number

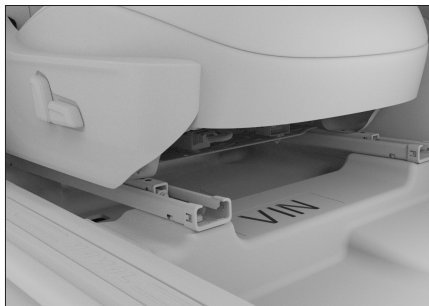
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the identity code of the vehicle and unique to every vehicle. It is engraved in the following locations:

- › The upper left side of the instrument panel.



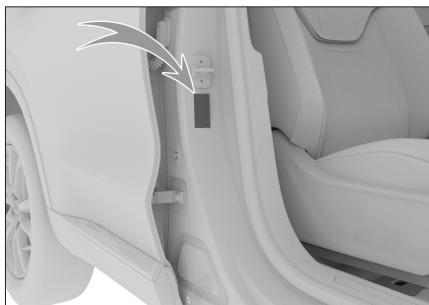
406BA7DE1CAD

- › On front mounting beam of the front right seat.



4E99569351B5

- › On the certification label below the central pillar lock.



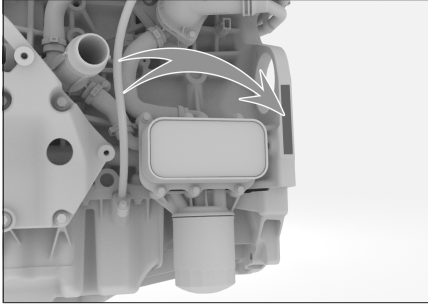
413FE9900803

i NOTICE

After using the diagnostic tool to connect the on-board diagnostic interface, you can read the vehicle identification number in the electronic control unit (ECU).

Engine number

GW4B15D



18FFD96A28A1

The engine number is engraved on the engine block, as shown in the figure.

i NOTICE

For easy viewing, a label containing the engine model and number is attached on the top of the front of the engine cylinder head cover.

Overall parameters

Power parameters

Engine

Model	Type	Maximum net power/speed [kW/rpm]	Maximum net torque/speed [N·m/rpm]	Maximum gradeability [%]
GW4B15D	Turbocharged gasoline engine	110/5500 to 6000	230/1500 to 4000	30 (PHEV models) 32 (HEV models)

Drive motor assembly

Model	Type	Peak power [kW]	Peak torque [N·m]
TZ220XS003	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	130	300

Generator assembly

Model	Rated voltage [V]	Peak power [kW]	Peak torque [N·m]
TY220XS003	224	81	120

Traction battery (PHEV models)

Model	Type	Rated voltage [V]	Rated capacity [Ah]	Operating temperature [°C]
PB313088A	Lithium iron phosphate battery	313	88	-30 to 55

Traction battery (HEV models)

Model	Type	Rated voltage [V]	Rated capacity [Ah]	Operating temperature [°C]
PE336005E	Ternary lithium ion battery	335.8	5	-35 to 65

Overall parameters

Tyre specifications

Item		Data
Specifications	Standard tyre	235/55 R19 101V, 235/55 R19 105V (PHEV models)
		225/55 R19 99V (HEV models)
Tyre pressure		Please refer to the tyre pressure label on the central pillar.
Tyre chain	Specifications	TPU polyurethane snow chain: thickness lower than 15 mm.
	Installation location	Front wheel

Wheel parameters

Item			Data
Dynamic balance parameters	Unilateral [g]		≤ 8
	Bilateral sum [g]		≤ 15
Alignment parameters	Rear wheel	Rear wheel camber	-0°64' ± 30' (Left and right difference ≤ 30')
		Rear wheel toe-in	0°4' ± 10' (left and right difference ≤ 10')
		Trust angle	0' ± 15'
	Front wheel	Kingpin caster	6.92° ± 0.75° (left and right difference ≤ 0.75°)
		Kingpin inclination	12.44° (reference value)
		Front wheel camber	-0°27' ± 45' (left and right difference ≤ 45')
		Front wheel toe-in	0°8' ± 5' (left and right difference ≤ 5')

Brake parameters

Brake parameters (PHEV models)

Item		Data
Brake pedal	Free travel [mm]	4 to 7

Overall parameters

Item		Data
Front brake pad (friction material)	Minimum thickness [mm]	2
Rear brake pad (friction material)	Minimum thickness [mm]	2
Front brake disc	Minimum thickness [mm]	28
Rear brake disc	Minimum thickness [mm]	18

Brake parameters (HEV models)

Item		Data
Brake pedal	Free travel [mm]	4 to 7
Front brake pad (friction material)	Minimum thickness [mm]	2
Rear brake pad (friction material)	Minimum thickness [mm]	2
Front brake disc	Minimum thickness [mm]	26
Rear brake disc	Minimum thickness [mm]	8

Fluid parameters

Specifications of GW4B15D engine oil

To ensure the performance and the service life of the engine, it is recommended to use fully synthetic engine oil recommended by the OEM.

If the genuine engine oil cannot be purchased in your area, it is recommended to use the following engine oil:

- › If you choose API (American Petroleum Institute) standard oils, use SP 0W-20 fully synthetic engine oil with medium-low ash content.
- › If you choose ACEA (European Automobile Manufacturers' Association) standard oils, use C5 0W-20 fully synthetic engine oil.

Engine oil capacity

Engine model	Recommended filling amount for maintenance [L] (reference value)	
	When changing both the oil and the oil filter	When only changing the oil
GW4B15D	4.0 ± 0.1	3.7 ± 0.1

Overall parameters

Other types of fluids (PHEV models)

Fluid type	Specifications	Recommended filling amount for maintenance [L] (reference value)
Transmission oil	DHTF 2	2.5 ± 0.05
Coolant	Ethylene glycol based No. 35	8.5 ± 0.2 (engine system) 5.6 ± 0.2 (electric drive system)
Brake fluid	DOT4 synthetic brake fluid	0.86 ± 0.1
Windscreen washer fluid	--	2.2 ± 0.2

i NOTICE

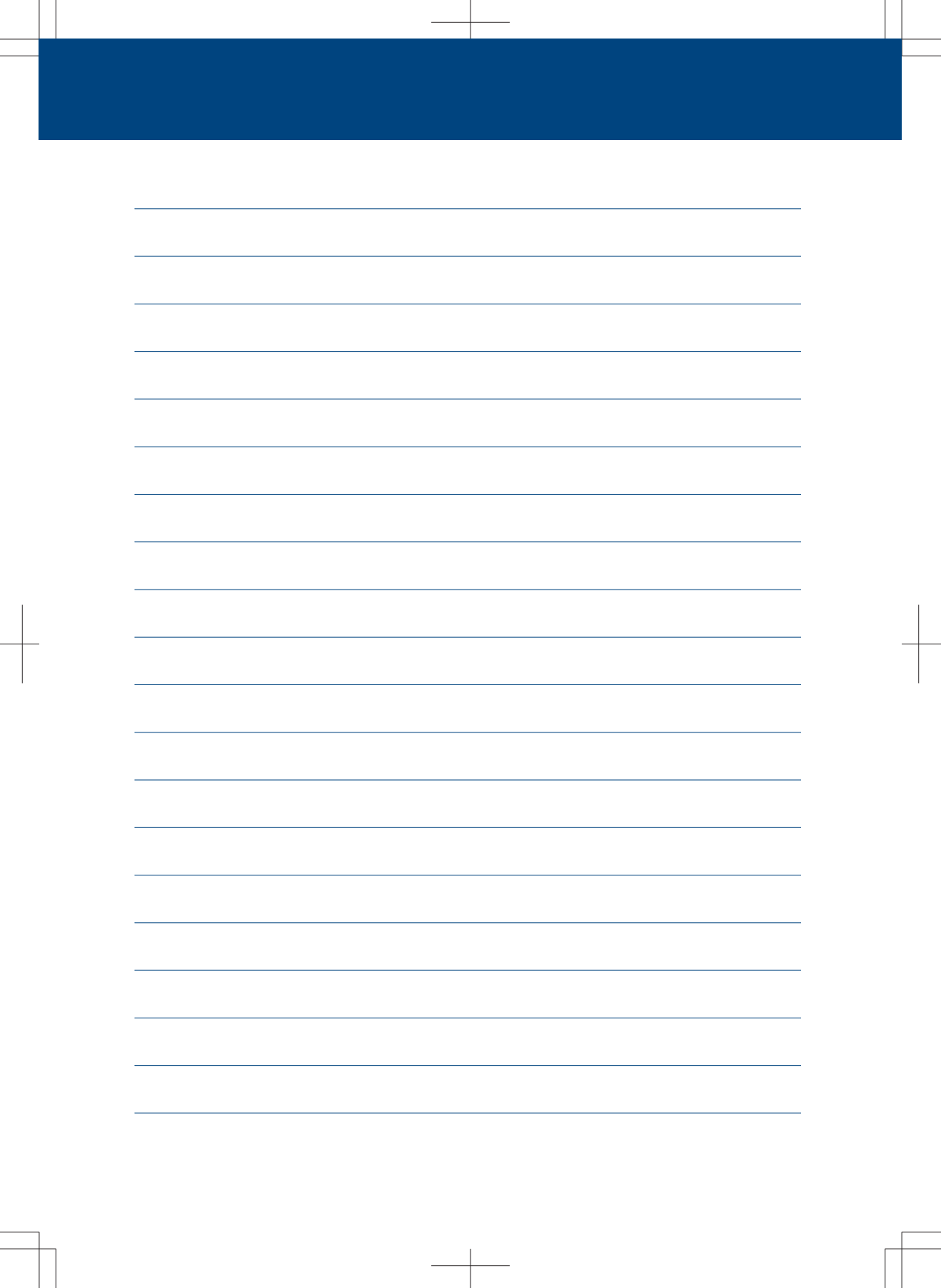
The above actual filling amount may slightly vary with products, equipment and climate factors.

Other types of fluids (HEV models)

Fluid type	Specifications	Recommended filling amount for maintenance [L] (reference value)
Transmission oil	DHTF 2	2.5 ± 0.05
Coolant	Ethylene glycol based No. 35	8 ± 0.5 (engine system) 3.5 ± 0.5 (electric drive system)
Brake fluid	DOT4 synthetic brake fluid	0.86 ± 0.1
Windscreen washer fluid	--	2.2 ± 0.2

i NOTICE

The above actual filling amount may slightly vary with products, equipment and climate factors.



8

Index

Alphabetical index.....314

Alphabetical index

A

A/C system 72

Airbag

Front airbag 227

Front airbags 225

Side airbag 228

Airbags

Curtain airbags 229

All apps interface 203

Anti-lock brake system 169

App store 214

B

Battery 294

Bonnet 38

Bottle holders 84

Brake fluid 277

Braking force assist system 170

Break-in period 103

C

Catalytic converter 173

Child lock 24

Child restraint system 233

Fixing points for the child seat 231

Comfortable braking 171

Control center 204

Crankcase emission control unit 174

D

Door lock

Locking and unlocking with central control buttons 22

Unlocking with the interior handle 22

Door locks

Emergency lock 23

Locking and unlocking through the passive entry system 21

Locking and unlocking with key buttons 22

Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key 23

Driving modes 121

Dynamic steering torque control (DST) system 172

E

Electric drive system coolant 278

Electric power steering (EPS) system 171

Electronic braking force distribution system 170

Electronic parking brake 113

Electronic stability control system 170

Emergency cut-off system 240

Emergency tyre repair 250

Engine compartment 273

Engine oil 276

Engine overheating 260

Engine system coolant 278

Entertainment scenarios 208

Exterior maintenance 294

Exterior pedestrian warning system 124

F

Fatigue driving warning system 143

Fluid level 274,275

Fluid parameters 310

Fuses 285

H

Headrest 53

Head up display 175

HHC (Hill-start hold control) 171

Home 202

Alphabetical index

Horn 59

I

Indicator lights 181

Inflator and tyre repair fluid 249

Inside rearview mirror

Automatic anti-glare inside rearview mirror 57

Instrument panel

Instrument panel 177,178

Interior maintenance 297

Interior rearview mirror

Manual anti-glare interior rearview mirror 57

J

Jump start method 256,257

K

Keys 16

L

Light control

Center roof light 68

Daytime running light 66

Emergency flashers 66

Light control switch 62

Light height adjustment 67

Reading light 67

Side roof light 67

M

Messages 214

Mobile phone wireless charging 80

O

On-board diagnostic system 174

One pedal mode 125

Oxygen sensor 173

P

Parking assist system

Around view monitor (AVM) 130,132

Collision avoidance radar 130

Intelligent fusion parking system 135

Parking setting 128

Reverse tracking 139

Power battery recovery 109

Power management system 191

Power parameters 308

Power steering mode 123

Power supply socket 85

Power supply switch 110

Protection films for new vehicles 294

R

Rearview mirrors

Side mirrors settings 58

Refuelling 40,41

Rollover prevention system 171

Roof rack 60

S

Seat

Convenient adjustment of front passenger seat 55

Front power seat 54

Seat belt 219

Seats

Rear seat adjustment 55

Seat heating function 56

Secondary collision mitigation system 171

Side mirrors 57

Starting and shutting down the engine 111

Steering wheel 59

Alphabetical index

Storage device 82

Sunroof

Opening and closing the sunroof 33

Opening and closing the sunshade 34

Sunroof maintenance 293

Sun visor 82

System manager 214

T

Tailgate

Electric foot activation tailgate 25

Emergency unlock 28

Towing 262

Traction control system 170

Turbocharger 174

Tyre inflation 251

Tyre maintenance 290

Tyre pressure monitoring system 141

V

Vanity mirror 82

Vehicle anti-theft system 238

Vehicle identification number 306

Voice control 211

W

Warning lights 181

Weather 214

Windows

Window settings 31

Window switch 29

Windscreen washer fluid 278

Wiper control

Front wiper 69

Front wiper settings 71

Rear wiper 71